

PRO PATRIA, A LATIN STORY  
FOR BEGINNERS, BEING A  
SEQUEL TO 'ORA MARITIMA,'  
WITH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES  
BY E. A. SONNENSCHN, D.LITT.,  
OXON., PROFESSOR IN THE UNI-  
VERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

*Qui procul hinc*, the legend's writ,  
The frontier grave is far away,  
*Qui ante diem periiit*;  
*Sed miles, sed pro patria.*

HENRY NEWBOLT;  
'Clifton Chapel.'

LONDON  
SWAN SONNENSCHN & CO., LIM<sup>D</sup>  
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.

1903



## Preface

THE idea on which my *Ora Maritima* and its sequel, the present volume, are based, is that an interesting narrative may be a better vehicle for teaching the elements of a language than a collection of isolated grammar sentences, provided that the interesting narrative is so constructed and graduated as to constitute in itself a basis for the systematic study of grammar. My object, then, has been to write a book which should not only appeal to the minds of pupils through the interest of its subject matter, but also form as complete a grammatical ladder as the driest of dry exercise books. *Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.*

In carrying out this programme for *Pro Patria* I have adhered to the ideal which I set up for myself in *Ora Maritima*, that the Latin text should be 'classical in form, but modern in setting.' The scene is laid in a country house on the coast of Kent, and afterwards at Winchester, and the time of the action is the period from September 1899 to June 1900. I have thus been enabled to give unity of action to the two parts into which the narrative falls. The first part is taken up with a study of Roman Britain in connexion with a visit to Richborough Castle; the second with the Boer War, the first news of which arrives soon after the conclusion of the summer holidays. It is my hope that the first part will give my readers some idea of the condition of Britain under the Romans; and in the treatment of the Boer War I have endeavoured to bring out its dramatic interest and heroic incidents as well as its permanent importance in the history of the British Empire. Party politics are, of course, kept out of view.

The amount of grammar covered by *Pro Patria*<sup>1</sup> may seem to some teachers disproportionately small; and, no doubt, if it had been my object simply to teach grammar, I might have made the text shorter. But a long experience in teaching Latin to pupils of very various ages and stages has made me sceptical as to the value of a skin-deep knowledge of grammar. It is one thing to learn declensions and conjugations out of a grammar or from grammar sentences, and quite another thing to know them as they appear in actual life. How many boys and girls leave school without having acquired any real mastery even of the simplest kind of Latin or the power of making any practical use of the grammatical facts which they have so laboriously learned! That is the sort of educational result on which the present outcry against Latin in schools is largely based. The great mistake seems to be that the elementary stages of learning are turned into a purely grammatical discipline and that the grammar is hurried over before the study of the language proper and the literature are commenced. Declensions and conjugations learned in this fashion find no real lodgment in the mind; or, at best, the outcome of the tedious process is that the pupil 'holds the parts in his hand,' but misses 'the spirit that binds them together.'<sup>2</sup> It is against this abstract method of teaching that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* are a protest. It has been my object to write for the use of the beginner a 'real book,' which shall have a literary as well as a linguistic interest of its own, and from which the pupil shall gain something more than a bowing acquaintance with Nouns and Verbs. I have, therefore, not shunned repetitions; and I have deliberately aimed at providing a certain

<sup>1</sup> The point from which *Pro Patria* starts is that which is reached in *Ora Maritima*, and the pupil is carried on to the end of the regular *accidence*.

<sup>2</sup> *Dann hat er die Teile in seiner Hand;  
Fehlt, leider! nur das geistige Band.*

—GOETHE, *Faust*.



mass of easy Latin from which he may acquire the habit of reading, as distinct from construing, Latin. If, at the end of two<sup>1</sup> years' work, the pupil has acquired this, together with the fundamentals of Latin grammar, he will have spent his time to some purpose, and will be in a position to begin the study of a classical author and of the more difficult parts of the grammar with some hope of a happy issue. Or if, on the other hand, he drops the study of Latin at this point, he will still have acquired a working knowledge of the language up to a certain level. This is an aspect of the matter on which I desire to lay some stress. There are many schools, or modern sides of schools, in which only a limited amount of time can be devoted to Latin; and the problem is how can that time be spent so as to produce the most profitable result. It is my hope that the present book may contribute to the solution of this problem.

It is not my intention that an equal amount of time and attention should be bestowed on all the sections of the text. Some of them (marked with a †) are unnecessary from the purely grammatical point of view; they exist for the purpose of carrying on the story and providing material for rapid reading; and where time presses they may be translated by the teacher to the class. The exercises and conversations are intended to be used as the needs of particular classes may demand. For translation into Latin alternative passages are given, from which the teacher may select what best suits his purpose. Some of them may be worked on paper, some *viva voce*, some may be omitted altogether. I have thought it better to give too much rather than too little.

One of my young friends who was learning from this book made a criticism of it which will probably pass through the minds of other readers. "The Romans," he said, "knew nothing of South Africa." Exactly; but it is possible that the best

---

<sup>1</sup> It is intended that *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* shall occupy one year each.

way to learn an ancient language is to study it as written at the present day in connexion with a subject matter which is familiar or easily intelligible to the modern reader. This is, of course, only a means to an end; but there are many ends which are better attained indirectly than directly.

I have ventured on some novelties in the realm of grammar teaching, among which the use of the term 'Injunctive,' side by side with 'Subjunctive,' calls for a word of explanation. The new term expresses the fundamental idea of what is commonly called the 'Subjunctive Mood'; it is the mood of *desire*, and should be introduced to the pupil in the first instance in connexion with sentences like 'God save the King.'<sup>1</sup> For such meanings the term Subjunctive is quite inappropriate, and a fruitful source of error; it comes in, however, so soon as the mood appears in a subordinate clause. And if the pupil subsequently abandons the term *Injunctive* altogether, it will nevertheless have served its purpose in introducing him to a right conception of the mood—a conception which will serve him in good stead afterwards.

My best thanks are due to Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, for permission to quote some verses which originally appeared in his Latin speeches to the University,<sup>2</sup> and for his great kindness in reading my proof sheets of the text and making many valuable suggestions.

E. A. S.

THE UNIVERSITY, BIRMINGHAM,  
July, 1903.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Preparations, §§ 48, 49, 50.

<sup>2</sup> These are acknowledged in their places in the "Preparations."

# Contents

PAGE

## I. MENSIS SEPTEMBER.

§ 1. Adjectives of 3rd Declension in —, <i>is</i> , <i>e</i> . . . . .	3
--	---

## II. BRITANNIA LIBERATA.

§ 2. <i>is</i> , <i>ca</i> , <i>id</i> —Singular Number . . . . .	4
---	---

## III. GUNOBELINUS.

§§ 3, 4. <i>ei</i> , <i>eae</i> , <i>ea</i> —Plural Number . . . . .	5
--	---

## IV. CARACTACUS.

§ 5. <i>eius</i> and <i>suus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> contrasted . . . . .	7
--	---

§ 6. <i>ipse</i> , <i>ipsa</i> , <i>ipsum</i> . . . . .	9
---	---

## V. BOADICEA.

§§ 7-9. <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> . . . . .	9
--	---

## VI. BRITANNIA PACATA.

§§ 10-13. <i>hic</i> , <i>haec</i> , <i>hoc</i> . . . . .	12
---	----

## VII. PAX ROMANA.

§ 14. Comparatives of Adjectives . . . . .	15
--	----

§ 15. Superlatives of Adjectives . . . . .	15
--	----

§§ 16, 17. Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation; Present, Past Imperfect and Future tenses . . . . .	17
--	----

## VIII. CASTELLUM RUTUPINUM.

§ 18. Questions and Exclamations . . . . .	20
--	----

§ 19. <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> and <i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> —in questions . . . . .	20
--	----

§§ 20, 21. <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> in clauses which are not questions . . . . .	21
--	----

§ 22. 2nd Conjugation; Present, Past Imperf. and Future, Active . . . . .	24
---	----

§ 23. 4th Declension and Passives of 2nd Conjugation . . . . .	24
--	----

## IX. ANGLI ET SAXONES.

§§ 24-26. 2nd Conjugation; Perfect Stem, Active . . . . .	26
---	----

§ 27. Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed . . . . .	28
--	----

§§ 28-30. 5th Declension. . . . .	29
-----------------------------------	----

## X. RES AFRICANAE.

§ 31. Recapitulation of Verbs . . . . .	31
---	----

§ 32. 3rd Conjugation; Present, Active and Passive . . . . .	33
--	----

XI ORIGO REIPUBLICAE AFRICANAE.	
§§ 33-35.	3rd Conjugation; Past Imperfect, Active and Passive, together with Imperative Active . . . . . 33
XII. INITIUM BELL.	
§ 36.	3rd Conjugation; Future, Active and Passive . . . . . 36
§ 37.	3rd Conj.; Perfect Stems Active formed with <i>s</i> . . . . . 37
§ 38.	3rd Conj.; Perfect Stems Active formed without any suffix . . . . . 37
§ 39.	3rd Conj.; Perfect, Pluperfect and Fut. Perf. Passive . . . . . 38
XIII. MILITES REGINAE.	
§ 40.	4th Conj.; Present, Active and Passive . . . . . 39
§ 41.	4th Conj.; Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive . . . . . 40
§ 42.	4th Conj.; Perfect Stem Active . . . . . 40
XIV. TRIA OPPIDA OBSESSA.	
§ 43.	Verbs in <i>io</i> with Infinitive in <i>ere</i> —Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive . . . . . 41
XV. VICTORIAE ET CLADES BRITANNICAE.	
§§ 44-47.	Same verbs continued, with Perfect Stems Active . . . . . 42
XVI. FOEDUS NOMINIS BRITANNICI.	
§ 48.	Present Injunctive of <i>sum</i> . . . . . 46
§ 49.	Present Injunctive of 1st Conjugation. . . . . 46
XVII. POST TENEBRAS LUX.	
§ 50.	Present Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> and 1st Conj. . . . . 47
XVIII. ADAMANTOPOLIS OBSIDIONE LIBERATA.	
§ 51.	Pres. Subj. of <i>sum</i> and 1st Conj.—continued . . . . . 49
§ 52.	Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations . . . . . 50
XIX. DIES MATUBENSIS.	
§ 53.	Past Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> . . . . . 50
§§ 54, 55.	Past Imperfect Subj. of the four Conjugations . . . . . 52
XX. PAX BRITANNICA.	
§ 56.	RECAPITULATION . . . . . 53
PREPARATIONS . . . . . 57	
EXERCISES AND CONVERSATIONS . . . . . 109	
GOD SAVE THE KING IN LATIN (Arranged for Singing) . . . . . 148	
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . . 149	
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . . 176	

PRO PATRIA



Antonus fecit

COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA AD DUBRAS  
ANNO MDCCCXCIX.

**I. Mensis September.**

[Adjectives of Third Declension in —, *is, e.*]

1. Kalendae sunt hodie Septembres. Primus 1  
mensis feriarum elapsus est, et scholae instant. Nam  
ante finem mensis Septembris apud magistrum 3  
meum ero. Et per ultimam partem feriarum necesse  
est libris duas horas cotidie dare. Sic imperat patruus  
meus. Mane igitur plerumque lectito. Patruus  
autem mihi librum Taciti de vita Agricolae, ducis  
celebris Romanorum, dedit. Multa insunt de Bri-  
tannia nostra antiqua. Vita Agricolae multum me  
delectat. Nonnullis tamen in locis difficilis est et  
obscura. Sed animo alacri lectito, quia patruus meus 11  
difficilia et obscura explicat, et tabulis pictis  
aedificiorum, armorum, nummorum, viarum illustrat.  
Ubi aliquid in Vita Agricolae deest, ibi patruus  
meus capita ex Annalibus Taciti vel ex Historia  
Anglica recitat. Amici mei, Marcus et Alexander,  
interdum adsunt dum recitat. Nam saepe nos  
visitant. Post prandium plerumque ambulamus,  
vel ludo trigonali operam damus, vel in mari  
natamus.

## II. Britannia Liberata.

[is, ea, id.—Singular Number.]

- 1 2. Gaius Iulius Caesar, postquam copias suas  
 2 pedestres et equestres ex Britannia in Galliam trans-  
 portavit, nihil amplius de Britannis cogitavit. Ab  
 incolis litoris meridiani victoriam reportaverat, ad  
 flumen Tamesam penetraverat, oppidum Cassi-  
 vellauni expugnaverat, magnum numerum cap-  
 tivorum in servitutem venumdederat, tributum  
 3 Britannis imperaverat. Id ei satis erat. Sed  
 4 Britanniam non revera debellaverat, nec victoria  
 5 eius magna fuerat. Tacitus eum non magnam  
 6 victoriam reportavisse in capite tertio decimo Vitae  
 Agricolae affirmat. "Divus Iulius" inquit "Bri-  
 7 tanniam Romanis monstravit, sed non debellavit."  
 8  
 9  
 10  
 11  
 12  
 13  
 14 Britanni autem viri animo forti erant. Tributum  
 et servitutem non tolerabant. Et Romanis post



- 15 tempora C. Iulii Caesaris longa oblivio erat Bri-  
 tanniae. Nam per multos annos bellum domes-  
 ticum civitatem Romanam vexavit. Post finem  
 16 eius belli Romani Augustum principem creaverunt.  
 17  
 18  
 19  
 20 Ei Britannia non curae erat. Nec principes secundus  
 et tertius, Tiberius et Caligula, insulam nostram  
 21 intraverunt; quamquam Caligula de ea intranda  
 22 cogitavit.



## III. Cunobelinus.

2 [ei, eae, ea—Plural Number.]

3. Itaque per centum fere annos reges Brit-  
tannici vel reginae Britannicae in Britannia regna-  
verunt, nec Romani Britannos bello vexaverunt.  
In numero eorum regum erat Cunobelinus. Is 4  
revera "Britannorum rex" erat : sic eum Suetonius, 5  
scriptor Romanus, nominat. Nam quamquam non  
omnes gentes Britannicae ei subiectae erant, tamen 7  
magnam partem gentium Britanniae mediterraneae  
et meridianae in unum regnum consociaverat.  
Caput earum gentium Camulodunum erat. Exstant 10  
hodie nummi Cunobelini ; in eis nomen regis vel 11  
litteras nonnullas eius nominis lectitare possumus : 12



exstant quoque nummi patris eius Tasciovani et 13  
fratris eius Epatikki. Cunobelinus multos annos  
regnavit ; eo fere tempore rex Britannorum erat 15  
cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum  
erant. Ei ab anno quarto decimo ad annum primum 17  
et quadragesimum post Christum natum imperio  
Romano praeerant. Iesus Christus natus erat 19  
dum Augustus princeps erat : morti datus erat 20  
dum Tiberius imperitabat, ut Tacitus in capite  
quarto et quadragesimo libri quinti decimi Annalium  
commemorat. Inter filios Cunobelini erant Carac- 23  
tacus et Togodumnus.

- 1 † 4. Is rex magnus et bonus erat, atque defensor  
 acer libertatis Britannicae. Sed Romani tantum  
 regem tolerare non poterant. Itaque de nova  
 expeditione contra Britanniam cogitabant. Poetae  
 5 Romani eius aetatis insulam nostram et incolas  
 6 eius saepe commemorant. Horatius eos "feros"  
 et "remotos" et "intactos" (id est "non debel-  
 latos" vel "liberos") nominat: Vergilius eos "toto  
 orbe terrarum divisos" (id est "separatos") vocat.  
 Mare eos ab aliis partibus orbis terrarum separabat;  
 11 et libertas eis cara erat. Pro aris et focis suis contra  
 Romanos magna virtute pugnaverant, atque hosti-  
 bus Romanorum in bello Gallico auxilia submis-  
 14 traverant. Itaque Romani libertatem eorum non  
 tolerabant.



NUMMUS AUGUSTI

(CAPUT AUGUSTI)

(FIGURA SPHINGIS)

## IV. Caractacus.\*

[*eius* and *suus*, *a*, *um* contrasted.]

† 5. Post mortem Cunobelini, Claudius, quartus princeps Romanorum, expeditionem contra Britannos paravit. Consilium eius erat totam Britanniam debellare et cum imperio Romano consociare. Itaque anno tertio et quadragesimo uni ex ducibus suis, Aulo Plautio, magnum numerum copiarum pedestrium et equestrium mandavit. Eae meridianam partem insulae nostrae facile occupaverunt. Oppidum Camulodunum expugnaverunt, ubi Romani post paucos annos coloniam veteranorum collocaverunt. Ea prima urbs Romana in Britannia fuit. Propter victoriam a Britannis reportatam princeps Romanus filio suo nomen Britannico dedit. Filius eius priore anno natus erat. Sed Britanni nondum debellati erant. In silvas montesque Cambriae se occultaverunt, ubi duae gentes bellicosae, Ordovices et Silures, per septem annos contra Romanos fortiter bellaverunt. Capiis Britannicis Caractacus, filius Cunobelini, praeerat. Nomen eius per totam Britanniam celebre erat. Non facile erat eas gentes Cambriae debellare. Reliquiae castrorum Romanorum Viroconii, Devae, Iscae hodie exstant. Sed legiones Romanae tandem victrices fuerunt, et Silures Ordovicesque magno proelio superaverunt. Deinde ducem eorum audacem et insignem Romam captivum deportaverunt.

---

\* Tacitus ducem Silurum *Caratacum* (non *Caractacum*) vocat.



PORTA·OCCIDENTALIS·  
COLONIAE·CAMVLODVNI

[*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

6. Nomen Caractaci iam per totam Italiam celebre erat; nam victoriam Romanorum per novem annos retardaverat. Et omnes homines cupidi erant regem Britannorum ipsum spectandi. Itaque Claudius populum ad grande spectaculum convocavit. Magna multitudo captivorum Britannicorum una cum Caractaco ipso et uxore fratribusque eius in catenis aderant. Tum ceteri captivi veniam principis imploraverunt. Sed Caractacus ipse animum audacem et vere Britannicum praestitit. Ante oculos principis ipsius collocatus "Rex sum" inquit "et a regibus claris oriundus: fuerunt mihi viri, equi, arma. Non mirum est si contra vos Romanos pro libertate pugnavi. Vos toti orbi terrarum imperitandi cupidi estis; sed nobis Britannis non mos est servitutem tolerare. Mortem non formido." Tum princeps propter admirationem tantae audaciae veniam libertatemque Caractaco ipsi et uxori fratribusque eius dedit. Sic Tacitus in capite septimo et tricesimo libri duodecimi *Annalium* narrat.

### V. Boadicea.\*

[*ille, illa, illud.*]

7. Anno post Christum natum primo et sexagesimo Britanni rebellaverunt. Suetonius Paulinus, unus ex ducibus Neronis, quinti principis Romanorum, Britanniae tum praeerat. Ille in Monam insulam penetravit, ubi magnum numerum Druid-

---

\* Tacitus reginam Icenorum *Boudiccam* (non *Boadiceam*) vocat.

arum trucidavit, et fana eorum vastavit. Sed dum  
7 ille in Cambria abest, Icenī cum Cassis et Tringban-  
tibus aliisque gentibus Britannicis se contra Romanos  
consociant. Non mirum est si Britanni coloniam  
10 illam Camulodunum, ubi veterani illi Romani  
collocati erant, non amabant. Nam veterani eos  
omnibus iniuriis vexabant. Uxores liberosque  
eorum in servitutem deportabant. Viros ipsos  
ignavos et servos vocabant. Oppidum iam viis et  
aedificiis Romanis ornaverant, sed muris non firma-  
16 verant. Inter illa aedificia templum "Divi Claudii"  
erat; nam principem mortuum Romani pro deo  
18 adorabant. Et in illo templo simulacrum Victoriae  
collocatum erat.

1 8. Itaque Boadicea, regina illa audax Icenorum,  
inter ordines Britannicos in essedo suo equitans,  
Britannos suos ad rebellionem incitavit. "Auscultate"  
inquit "Icenī et Cassi; auscultate Coritani,  
5 Trinobantes! Di nostri nobis victoriam, illis cladem  
mortemque parant! Ecce, colonia Camulodunum  
defensoribus nudata est! Copiae Romanae in  
finibus Ordovicum longe absunt, ubi fana Druidarum  
vastant. Coloniam illam, ubi pauci tantum veterani  
cum uxoribus liberisque suis habitant, facile erit  
11 expugnare. Illos nulla patria ad virtutem incitat;  
nos patria et penates, nos libertas ad arma vocat.  
Atque di ipsi nobis omen victoriae et imperii dede-  
14 runt. Nam simulacrum illud Victoriae praecipita-  
verunt. Et Druidae alia portenta nuntiant. Terrae  
adhuc ignotae Britannis aliquando subiectae erunt.  
17 Ubi Caesares numquam steterunt, ibi filii nostri  
vel filii filiorum imperitabunt. Vos coloniam illam

crudelem expugnate ! Templum dei illius falsi <sup>19</sup>  
 cremate ! Viros, feminas, liberos trucidate ! Illud <sup>20</sup>  
 est consilium feminae. Num vos viri minus fortes <sup>21</sup>  
 eritis ? ”



† 9. Britanni ad arma volant. Coloniam  
 Iodunum expugnant ; templum illud Claudii, ubi  
 veterani se occultaverant, cremant. Interea  
 Suetonius ex insula Mona cum decem milibus  
 virorum ad Tamesam properavit. Nam Londinium,  
 quamquam nondum colonia Romana erat, tamen  
 iam tum copia mercatorum et navigiorum celebre  
 erat. Sic Tacitus in capite tertio et tricesimo libri  
 quarti decimi Annalium affirmat. Sed urbem ex  
 clade servare non poterat. Britanni Londinium

et Verulamium oppugnant, septuaginta milia  
12 Romanorum trucidant, ingentem praedam captant.  
13 Suetonius suos prope silvam collocaverat, et se ad  
proelium parabat. Britanni Romanos numero  
virorum multum superabant, et exspectatione  
16 victoriae triumphabant. Sed pauci illi Romani  
magnam victoriam reportaverunt; Britanni contra  
legiones Romanas stare non poterant, quia Romani  
eos pondere armorum et scientia belli multum super-  
abant. In illo proelio Romani octoginta milia  
virorum et feminarum trucidaverunt; nam Britanni  
22 feminas suas in vehiculis apportaverant, proelii  
23 spectandi causa. Boadicea ipsa se morti dedit.

## VI. Britannia pacata.

[*hic, haec, hoc.*]

1 10. Hic fuit finis rebellionis Boadiceae. Sed  
Romani nondum totam insulam pacaverant. Nam  
Britannia provincia turbulenta erat, ut Tacitus  
affirmat; et Britanni occidentales et septentrionales  
victoriam Romanorum adhuc retardabant. Totam  
6 insulam pacare consilium erat Vespasiani, noni  
principis Romanorum. Itaque anno duodeocto-  
gesimo post Christum natum Iulio Agricolae sum-  
mum imperium legionum Britannicarum mandavit.  
10 Huius viri clari vitam Tacitus narravit. Uxor  
11 Taciti filia Agricolae erat. Hunc virum Tacitus  
magnopere amabat, et memoriam eius monumento  
pulchro consecravit: monumentum est liber ille  
de vita eius. Vir iustus, humanus, clemens erat,  
si testimonium Taciti verum est.



11. Primo anno imperii sui Agricola in Cambria bellavit, ubi magnam victoriam ab Ordovicibus reportavit. Hanc gentem fere totam trucidavit, si Tacitus vera affirmat. Tum insulam Monam occupavit. Naves ei deerant; sed sub signis Romanis nonnullae cohortes Batavorum militabant. Hi periti erant natandi, et trans fretum nataverunt. Tertio anno Agricola contra Brigantes aliasque gentes septentrionales Britanniae bellavit. Sexto anno classem comparavit. Dum haec oram maritimam Caledoniae explorat, ipse cum copiis pedestribus et equestribus per Devam et Luguvallium in Caledoniam usque ad Clotam et Bodotriam penetrat. Totam regionem castellis firmat. Sed Caledonii trans Clotam et Bodotriam, velut in alteram insulam, se congregant. Proximo anno Romani in partes interiores Caledoniae penetrant. Ibi, prope Montem Graupium, dux Caledonius, Galgacus vel Calgacus nomine, suos ad proelium his verbis incitat.

12. "Haec pugna, ut spero, causa libertatis perpetuae toti Britanniae erit. Nobis Caledonibus, servitus adhuc ignota est. Hi montes, hae silvae, haec maria nobis libertatem dederunt. Sed nunc in hunc angulum remotum Britanniae Romani penetraverunt. Adsunt, velut lupi saevi; nec Oriens nec Occidens eos satiavit. Ne mare quidem nostrum a periculo classis Romanae tutum est. Terra marique hanc insulam oppugnant. Itaque nullam veniam exspectate, si illi in hoc proelio victoriam reportaverint. Vos ipsos et uxores liberosque vestros trucidabunt vel in servitutem

13 deportabunt; et cum totam terram vastaverint,  
solitudinem pacem vocabunt. Sed nondum 'pacata'  
15 est haec Caledonia. Iceni et Trinobantes Coloniam  
Romanam expugnaverunt et cremaverunt. Femina  
facinoris illius praeclari dux erat. Num vos, viri  
Caledonii, minus fortes eritis? Hodie pacem  
illam Romanam a vobis ipsis et uxoribus liberisque  
vestris propulsate. Patria ipsa vos ad pugnam et  
victoriam vocat!"

1 † 13. Interea Agricola quoque suos in hunc  
modum ad proelium incitat. "Hic septimus  
est annus, milites, postquam Ordovices debel-  
lavistis. Hodie a Caledonibus victoriam reportate.  
5 Hi se in silvis montibusque suis adhuc occulta-  
6 verunt; hos, homines ignavos, facile in fugam  
dabitis." Et signum pugnandi dedit. Tres  
legiones Romanae et undecim milia auxiliorum in  
campo lato stabant: Caledones in collibus suos collo-  
7 caverant. Primo Caledones missilia Romanorum  
vitabant. Et ipsi multa missilia in Romanos  
iactabant. Sed tandem cohortes illae Batavorum  
ad colles appropinquaverunt, et Caledones ex loco  
14 propulsaverunt. Nam hi iustum proelium tolerare  
non poterant. Interea equites auxiliorum eos  
velut indagine circumdederant. Decem milia  
trucidaverunt vel vulneraverunt. Nonnulli ex  
18 Caledonibus uxores liberosque suos ipsi morti  
dederunt. Nox finis fuit trucidationis. Postridie  
atrox spectaculum erat: corpora inhumata, casae  
crematae, silentium, solitudo.

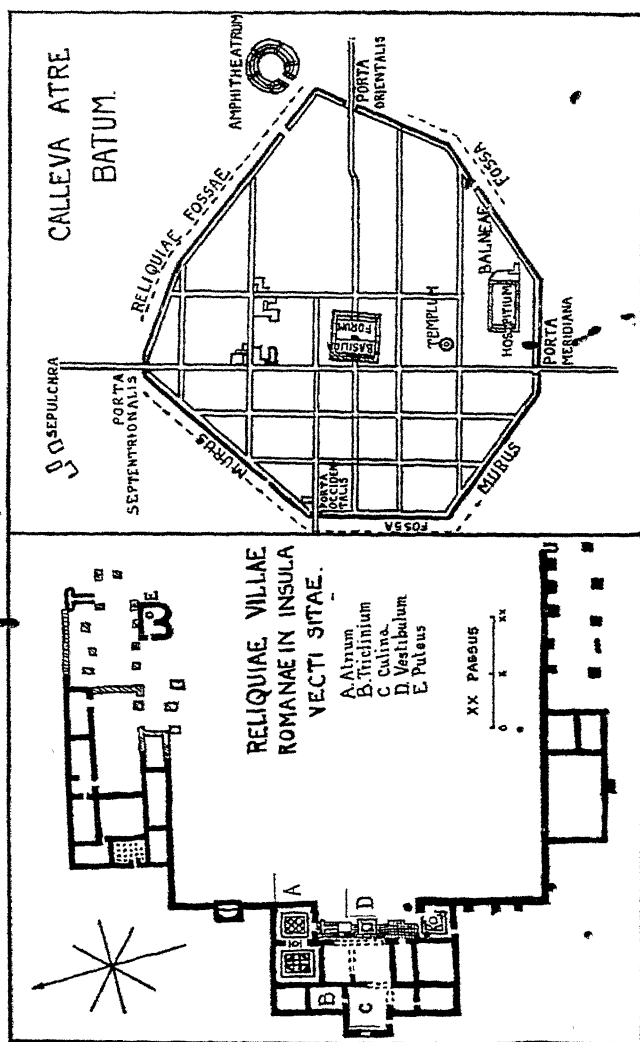
## VII. Pax Romana.

[Comparatives of Adjectives.]

14. Postquam hoc caput in vita Agricolae  
 lectitavimus, patruus meus "Haec narrat Tacitus ipse" inquit: "sed si testimonium eius verum  
 est, nullus victor Romanus humanior, nullus clementior fuit quam Iulius Agricola. Nulla autem  
 provincia turbulentior fuerat quam Britannia.  
 Nulli hostes Romanorum fortiores, nulli audaciores fuerant quam Britanni et Caledones et gentes  
 Cambriae. Quis ex omnibus Romanis se iustiores in hostes debellatos praestitit, quis clementiorem,  
 quis minus saevum et crudelem, quam Agricola? Sed quid inhumanius, quid saevius est quam  
 bellum? Atque nulli hostes in bello crudeliores fuerunt quam Romani. Nihil minus clemens erat  
 quam hostes debellatos in servitutem deportare. Nam mors pulchra minus misera est quam servitus.  
 Omnibus hominibus vita cara est; sed viris liberis libertas carior est quam vita. Atque nulli homines  
 unquam acriores defensores libertatis suae fuerunt quam Britanni. Nihil pulchrius existimabant  
 quam libertatem, nihil miserius quam servitutem."

[Superlatives of Adjectives.]

15. "Omnia bella saeva et inhumana sunt. Omnium autem bellorum saevissima et inhumanissima fuerunt bella illa temporibus antiquis contra gentes barbaras pugnata. Romani hostes crudelissimi plerumque fuerunt. Sed quid utilius fuit toti orbi terrarum quam imperium Romanum? Et imperio Romano nullum maius periculum erat

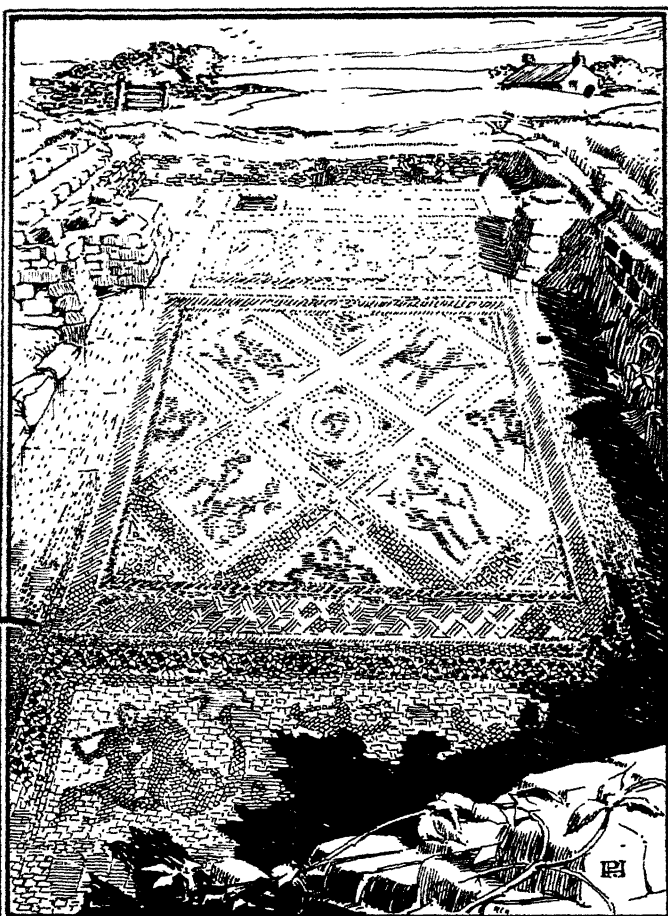


*Antoninus fecit*

quam rebelliones populorum barbarorum. Pax illa Romana etiam populis subiectis utilissima 9 fuit. Homines feros et inhumanos a studio bellandi ad vitam humaniorem et ad litteras, artes, scientias revocavit. Romani Britanniam viis optimis et aedificiis pulcherrimis celeberrimisque, templis, 13 basilicis, foris, villis, ludis litterariis, ornaverunt. In ludis litterariis filii principum Britannicorum linguae Latinae operam dabant. Itaque Britanni iram iniuriasque suas paulatim oblivioni dabant. Libertatis suae defensores fortissimi et acerrimi 18 fuerant. Sed tributum Romanum tolerabant, si iniuriae aberant. Multae hodie exstant in Britannia reliquiae aedificiorum illorum Romanorum. Callevae Atrebatum reliquias pulcherrimas basilicae 22 fori, templi, amphitheatri, balnearum, murorum spectavi; et in insula Vecti exstant pavimenta tessellata villae Romanae, primo saeculo post Christum natum aedificatae. Sed iam ante tempora Agricolae nonnullae ex gentibus Britannicis medio- 27 criter humanae fuerant. Incolas Cantii Caesar in libro quinto Belli Gallici 'omnium Britannorum humanissimos' vocat."

[Passive Voice of 1st Conjugation—Present, Past Imperf., Future.]

16. Medius erat mensis September cum patruus meus haec de Britannia Romana explicavit. Marcus et Alexander tum aderant: nam pridie Dubris adventaverant et apud nos pernoctaverant. Et patruo meo necesse erat eis de rebellionem Galgaci et Caledonum narrare. Nam historia patriae suae magnopere delectantur. Tum ille "Nonne recte" 7



PAVIMENTVM·TESSELLATVM·VILLAE·ROMANAE  
IN·INSVLA·VECTI·SITAE

inquit "Agricola a Tacito laudatur? Nam ab  
 aliis imperatoribus Romanis oppida expugnabantur,  
 agri vastabantur, nationes barbarae debellabantur;  
 sed Agricola Britannos non solum debellavit sed  
 etiam ad vitam humaniorem revocavit." Et  
 Alexander "Magnopere delector" inquit "si victor  
 iustus et clemens fuit. Sed num hic vir omnia illa  
 aedificia Romana aedificavit?" Et ille "Bri-  
 tannia per quattuor saecula aedificiis Romanis  
 ornatus. Multae ex illis reliquiis posterioris  
 aetatis sunt."

17. Tum Marcus "Num filii principum Bri-  
 tannicorum studio linguae Latinae delectabantur?"  
 inquit. Et ille "Filii Britannorum antiquorum  
 animo acri et impigro erant; linguae Latinae  
 libenter operam dabant. Agricola eos aptiores esse  
 ad studia litterarum affirmabat quam Gallorum  
 pueros. Et Martialis, poeta Romanus illius  
 aetatis, Britannos carmina sua cantavisse affirmat.  
 Vos hodierni pila et folle delectamini." Et ego  
 "Nonne tu ipse, patruie mi patruissime, corporis  
 certaminibus delectaris? Magna est scientia  
 pilam dextra laevaue captare." Et ille "Adule-  
 scentulus" inquit "illa scientia satis delectabar;  
 cum senex fuero, fortasse non delectabor." Nos  
 cachinnamus. Nam patruus meus ludo trigonali  
 magnopere delectatur. Tu, mi patruie, huius ludi  
 peritissimus es:

• Nec tibi mobilitas minor est, si forte volantem  
 Aut geminare pilam iuvat aut revocare cadentem

ut est apud poetam Romanum. Mutato nomine de  
 te, patruie, fabula narratur.

## VIII. Castellum Rutupinum.

[Questions and Exclamations.]

† 18. Postridie inter ientaculum amita mea  
 “Caelum hodie serenissimum est” inquit: “cur  
 3 non Rutupias hodie ambulatis?” Et ego “Cur  
 non tu quoque, amita, et Lydia nobiscum ambu-  
 latis?” “Nimis longa est via” inquit. Sed  
 patruus meus “Vehiculo commeari potestis. Quota  
 hora nunc est?” Et illa “Nondum tertia hora  
 est.” Tum ille “Quinta hora in viam vos date:  
 9 ante nos Rutupias adventabitis. Cum ruinas castelli  
 spectaverimus, omnes in vehiculo una domum pro-  
 perabimus.” Tum Lydia “Quantopere delectabor  
 si ruinas Castelli Rutupini aliquando spectare  
 potero!” Et amitae meae propositum gratissi-  
 14 mum erat. “Sed nonne melius erit” inquit “in  
 castello cenare? Nam sic non necesse erit domum  
 16 festinare.” Tum nos pueri exclamavimus: “Euge  
 optime! prandium nobiscum portabimus; post  
 prandium ruinas castelli visitabimus. Deinde in  
 castello cenabimus. Sic erit!” Et amita mea  
 20 “Quando in viam vos dabit?” inquit. Et nos  
 “Statim sine mora” inquit.

[qui, quae, quod and quis, quid—in questions.]

19. Inter viam Marcus patrum meum de vic-  
 2 toria illa a Caledonibus reportata interrogavit.

3 *Marcus.*—Quis fuit ille Galgacus? Num rex  
 antiquus Scotorum fuit?

*Patruus meus.*—Nulli Scoti eo tempore in  
 Caledonia erant, Nondum in Caledoniam migra-  
 verant,



*M.*—Quid igitur erat nomen incolarum Caledoniae, si non Scoti erant ? 8

*P.*—Caledonia eo tempore a Pictis aliisque gentibus Caledoniis habitabatur.

*M.*—Qui erant Picti ? 12

*P.*—Difficilis est quaestio. De origine Pictorum viri docti disputant.

*M.*—Quo tempore Scoti in Caledoniam migraverunt ? 15

*P.*—Quinto saeculo post Christum natum.

*M.*—Qua ex terra migraverunt ? 18

*P.*—Ex Hibernia eos in Caledoniam migravisse scriptores historici affirmant.

*M.*—Quem igitur primum regem Scotorum fuisse affirmant ? 21

*P.*—Fergus primus rex Scotorum nominatur.

*M.*—Cuius partis Caledoniae rex fuit ? 24

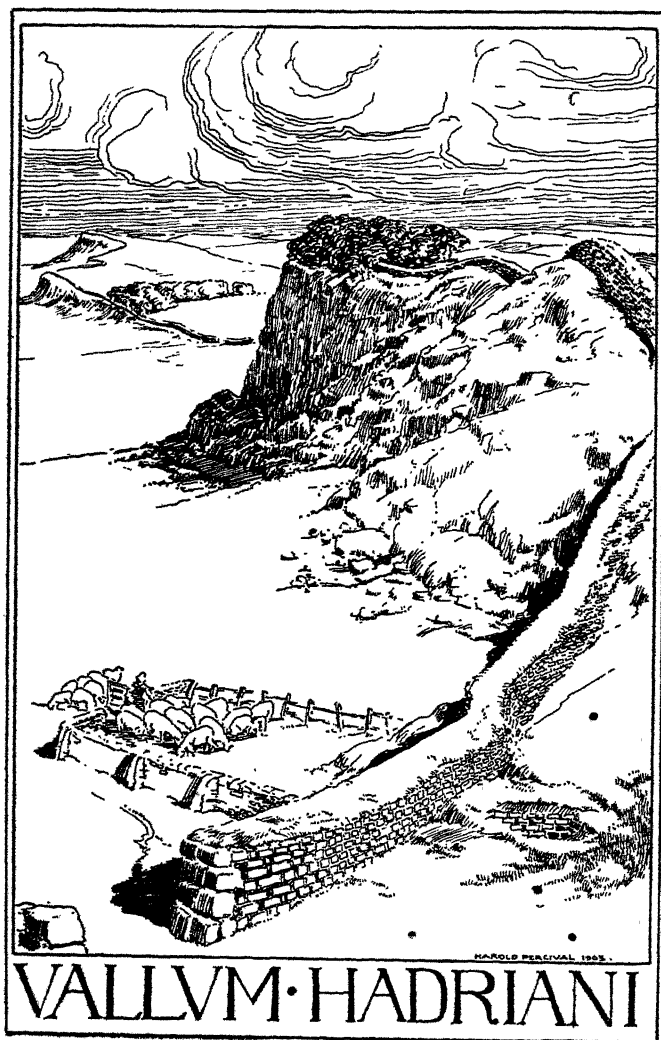
*P.*—Partis meridiana.

*M.*—Itaque Galgacus fortasse Pictus fuit.

*P.*—Fortasse ; sed nihil de eo notum est.

[*qui, quae, quod*—in clauses which are not questions.]

20. Tum Alexander "Caledonia" inquit "ut spero, nunquam subiecta fuit Romanis: nam maiores mei ex Caledonia oriundi sunt." Nos cachinnamus. Et patruus meus "Caledones per quattuor illa saecula saepe rebellaverunt, et Romanos bello vexaverunt. Itaque necesse fuit Hadriano, qui secundo saeculo post Christum natum princeps Romanorum fuit, magnum illud vallum inter Luvavallium et Pontem Aelium vel Segedunum aedificare; cuius reliquiae hodie spectantur. Et 10



Antoninus Pius, qui post eum princeps fuit, alterum 11  
vallum in ipsa Caledonia inter Clotam et Bodotriam  
aedificavit : cui nomen hodiernum est *Graham's* 13  
*Dyke*. Initio tertii saeculi Septimius Severus, quem 14  
Romani paucis annis ante principem creaverant, 15  
maximam expeditionem contra Caledones com-  
paravit ; postea autem ipse aegrotavit et Eburaci 17  
expiravit. Quo anno quinquaginta milia Roman- 16  
orum a Caledonibus trucidata fuisse narrantur.”  
Tum Alexander exclamat “ Euge, optime ! O si sic 20  
omnes ! ”

† 21. Et patruus meus “ Tune, Alexander ” 1  
inquit “ Pictus es ? ” Et ille “ Scotus sum ” inquit.  
Et patruus meus “ Sed non Celtica origine es : nam 3  
nomen tuum et fratris tui Germanicum est. Picti 4  
et Scoti illi qui in Caledoniam migraverunt Celtae  
erant.” Et ille “ Nonne toti insulae nostrae nomen  
est Britanniae ? Nonne omnes Britanni sumus ? ”  
Et patruus meus “ Ita est ” inquit ; “ nomen Bri-  
tanniae a Britannis oriundum est. Sed nos ipsi ex  
multis et diversis nationibus oriundi sumus. Maxi-  
ma pars Anglorum et Scotorum hodiernorum Ger-  
manica origine sunt.” Tum ego “ Parentes mei ”  
inquam “ Celtica origine sunt ; nam nomen nostrum  
Celticum est.” Sed patruus meus “ Tu, Antoni, in 14  
Africa Meridiana natus es ; itaque Africanus es ! ”  
Et ego “ Africa Meridiana pars imperii Britannici  
est ; itaque Britannus sum.” Et ille “ Ita est ”  
inquit ; “ ubi libertas, ibi patria est.” 18

[Second Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect, Future, Active.]

22. Sed iam prope finem ambulationis nostrae  
 2 eramus, cum Alexander “Ecce, Rutupias video!”  
 inquit. Et castellum non procul aberat. Amita  
 mea et Lydia, quae ante nos adventaverant, cum nos  
 5 vident, “Salvete!” inquirunt; “gaudemus quod  
 ad tempus adestis. Sed nonne fatigati estis?” Et  
 7 patruus meus sic respondet: “Bene nos habemus.  
 8 Sed nos non pigebit hic paulum sedere et prandio  
 9 nos recreare. Hinc castellum in oculis habemus.  
 10 Videtisne ruinas? Ut aetas omnia delet!” Illae  
 11 rident; nam revera fatigati eramus. Castellum  
 Rutupinum, tertio saeculo a Romanis aedificatum,  
 in promunturio litoris situm est. Hodie procul a  
 14 mari iacet; sed temporibus Romanorum totus  
 campus, qui nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam  
 iacet, pars maris erat. Post prandium ad castellum  
 ipsum ambulavimus. Ruinae praeclarae sunt. Pars  
 17 murorum lateribus Romanis aedificata est; sed  
 19 multis locis deleti sunt. Murus qui ad septentriones  
 spectat quadringentos quadraginta pedes longus est,  
 viginti vel triginta pedes altus. Sed quondam  
 22 maiorem altitudinem habebat; nam fundamenta  
 murorum alte sub terra iacent. In angulis murorum  
 24 fundamenta turrium vides.

[Fourth Declension and Passives of Second Conjugation.]

1 23. Temporibus antiquis portus celeberrimus hic  
 2 erat, cui nomen erat Portui Rutupino; naves ex  
 3 Gallia in Britanniam navigantes ad hunc portum  
 4 plerumque applicabantur. Nam omnium portuum  
 Britannicorum hic optimus erat. Castellum in



CASTELLVM·RVTPINVM

6 litore portus stabat. Intra muros castelli est area  
 lata. In media area fundamentum aedificii antiqui  
 vides, quod formam crucis habet. Hodie 'Crux  
 Sancti Augustini' vocatur, sed temporibus Romanis  
 fundamentum phari erat, ut custos castelli affirmavit.  
 Sub hac cruce est aedificium subterraneum, quattuor  
 12 et quadraginta passus longum; quod intravimus.  
 13 Cereos in manu tenebamus, quos custos dederat;  
 nam locus obscurus erat. Ab hoc aedificio cuniculus,  
 in formam quadratam excavatus, sub magnam  
 16 partem areae pertinet. Dum per cuniculum ambu-  
 17 lamus, amita mea "Cui erat usui hic cuniculus?"  
 inquit. Et custos sic respondet: Piget me quod de  
 19 usu cuniculi nihil affirmare possum. Usui fortasse  
 20 erat, si castellum obsidebatur: ecce puteus altus, ex  
 21 quo aqua praeberi poterat." Postquam haec spec-  
 tavimus, iterum circum muros ambulavimus. Dum  
 23 ad dextrum cornu castelli stamus, patruus meus  
 T nobis reliquias amphitheatri Romani monstravit,  
 quod non procul aberat. Magna multitudo num-  
 morum Romanorum in castello servantur; ex quibus  
 unum mihi custos venundedit. Tum custodem  
 28 valere iubemus, et ad cenam properamus.

### IX. Angli et Saxones.

[Second Conjugation—Perfect Stem, Active.]

24. Inter cenam nos pueri "Quis hoc castellum  
 2 delevit?" inquit. Et patruus meus "De for-  
 3 tuna castelli nihil constat" inquit; "aetas fortasse  
 muros delevit. Sed vos mihi respondete. Cuius  
 5 nomen hic praecipuo honore habetur?" Aqua  
 6 haerebat: nihil habuimus respondere. Et amita

mea "Nonne memoria tenetis?" inquit. Tum Lydia, quae librum de historia Anglica in manibus nuper habuerat, "Angli et Saxones" inquit "in hunc angulum Cantii cursum tenuerunt." Et ille "Verum est" inquit; "nam anno quadringentesimo quadragesimo nono Hengistus et Horsa ad insulam Tanatim, quae tum revera insula erat, naves suas applicaverunt. Locus ipse duo tantum vel tria milia passuum a castello Rutupino iacet." Tum illa "Nonne ab angulo Cantii Angli nomen suum habuerunt?" Nos pueri risimus. Sed amita mea "Sic nuper affirmavit vir doctus. Atque nomen ipsum Cantii nihil aliud significat quam promunturium vel angulum." Tum patruus meus "Sed Tacitus populum Germaniae Inferioris commemorat qui nomen habebat Anglorum; pars Sueborum erant." Et Lydia "Fortasse in angulo Germaniae habitabant" inquit. Et ille "In paeninsula Cimbria revera habitavisse affirmantur; et duo illa verba 'angulus' et 'Cantium' Germanica sunt." † 25. "Sed de Hengisto et Horsa" inquit "non cogitabam cum interrogavi. Quis alius vir clarus hic praecipuo honore habetur?" Aqua iterum haesit: nos nihil respondimus. Sed ille "Abhinc annos duos saecula tredecim fuerant, ex quo Sanctus Augustinus, nuntius verbi divini, cum parva manu ministrorum fidorum huc cursum tenuit. Nam anno quingentesimo nonagesimo septimo, post Christum natum Gregorius Primus, pontifex Romanus, Augustinum notitiam Dei veri in Anglia docere iusserat. Itaque Augustinus ex Gallia in Britanniam navigavit, et navem suam ad insulam

Tanatim applicavit. Eo tempore Aedilberctus rex Cantii erat, qui uxorem Christianam, nomine Berc-tam, habebat, filiam regis Francorum. Itaque rex  
 16 Christianis benignus fuit, atque Duroverni, in capite  
 17 regni sui, eis domum prae-buit.”

1 † 26. Tum amita mea: “Sed antequam rex Christianis domum prae-buit, sermonem cum eis habuit, dum in clivo gramineo sedebant, unde urbem Durovernum procul videre poterant. Vel, ut nonnulli libri historici affirmant, Christiani ad ipsos muros Castelli Rutupini navem suam applicaverant, et per fenestram castelli cum rege sermonem habuerunt. Nam eo tempore aqua portus Rutupini usque ad muros castelli pertinebat. Rex Christianis  
 10 in hunc modum respondisse narratur. *Pulchra sunt verba et promissa vestra; sed nova sunt et incerta; nec deos antiquos, quos per multos annos ego et populus meus adoravimus, oblivioni dare possumus. Sed, quia ex terra peregrina huc cursum tenuistis, et in animo habetis ea docere quae vera esse existimatis, non pro-*  
 16 *hibebo vos in regno meo manere et notitiam Dei vestri docere. Itaque domum vobis Duroverni praebebo.*” Et basilicam Sancti Martini eis dedit.”

[Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive—how expressed.]

27. Tum nos “Christiani igitur fuerant in Britannia iam ante adventum Sancti Augustini?” inquit. Et ille “Fuerant” inquit; “nam basilicae a Christianis Britannicis iam temporibus Romanis  
 5 aedificatae erant, quarum reliquias vos Dybris  
 6 vidistis et ego Callevae vidi. Post principatum Neronis multi Christiani in imperio Romano fuerunt; nam anno primo et sexagesimo post Christum natum



Sanctus Paulus Romam captivus deportatus est. 9  
 Et uxor illius Auli Plautii, qui iam aetate principis  
 Claudii Britanniae praefuit, Christiana fuisse exis-  
 timatur. Nam 'superstitionis peregrinae' accusata 12  
 est. Nomen ei fuit Pomponiae Graecinae. Sed 13  
 Angli et Saxones, qui multos deos adorabant, basili-  
 cas Christianas plerumque deleverant. Basilica 15  
 autem Sancti Martini, quae Duroverni erat, non  
 omnino deleta erat. Durovernum igitur intraverunt 17  
 nuntii illi verbi divini, crucem argenteam et simu-  
 lacrum Christi in manibus tenentes, et carmen 19  
 sacrum cantantes : *Iram tuam ab hac urbe et a domo* 20  
*tua sancta remove, o Deus ; quia peccavimus : alleluia !*  
 Sic Beda, vir venerabilis, narrat."

[Fifth Declension.]

28. Et amita mea : "Cur non illud in memor-  
 iam revocas, quod animum pontificis illius Gregorii  
 misericordia Anglorum commoverat ? Nam multis 3  
 annis ante in foro Romano quondam fuit, cum 4  
 pueros nonnullos facie pulchra, oculis caeruleis, 5  
 capillis flavis vidit. Misericordia commotus est : 6  
 nam illi pueri servi erant et venundabantur. Itaque  
 mercatores, quorum in manu pueri erant, sic inter- 8  
 rogavit : "Quae est patria eorum ?" inquit. Et  
 mercatores "Ex Anglia sunt" inquirunt, "cuius 9  
 incolae huius faciei sunt." Tum Gregorius "Num 11  
 Christiani sunt ?" "Non sunt" inquirunt. Et ille  
 "Heu !" inquit ; "quam pulchra est facies eorum 13  
 quos Rex Tenebrarum ministros habet !" Deinde 14  
 alia interrogavit : "Quid est nomen gentis eorum ?" 15  
 inquit. Responderunt eos esse Anglos. Et ille 16  
 "Recte !" inquit ; "nam angelicam faciem habent : 17

18 non Anglos sed Angelos eos vocari oportet. Sed  
 quid est nomen illius partis Angliae in qua habita-  
 bant ? ” “ Deira vocatur, quae pars Northumbriae  
 est ” inquiunt. Sed ille “ Recte ! ” inquit ; “ nam  
 22 de ira Dei ad fidem revocandi sunt. ” Postremo  
 “ Quis est rex illius partis Angliae ? ” inquit. “ Aella  
 vocatur ” inquiunt. Tum “ Alleluia ! ” inquit ; “ nam  
 25 dies adventat cum carmen omnium carminum  
 optimum in Anglia cantabitur ! ”

1 † 29. Sed finis diei illius belli iam adventabat,  
 et necesse erat domum properare. Intra semihoram  
 3 vehiculum paratum erat, et in viam nos dedimus.  
 Dum in vehiculo sedebamus, muros castelli luna  
 plena illustratos vidimus. Pulchrum erat specta-  
 6 culum. Mox domi eramus. Nos pueri longo die  
 fatigati et semisomni eramus. “ Non pigebit vos ”  
 inquit amita mea “ ad lectum properare. ” Ea  
 9 nocte Marcus et Alexander apud nos manserunt.  
 Postridie Dubras redambulaverunt.

1 † 30. Hodie iam quinque dies post Idus Sep-  
 2 tembres elapsi sunt, et dies ille ater appropinquat  
 qui ultimus feriarum erit. Omnium dierum ille  
 tristissimus est qui finis est feriarum. Nam triste  
 5 est verbum ‘ vale, ’ cum scholae instant. Intra  
 paucos dies patrum meum et amitam meam et  
 7 Lydiam valere iubebo. Quam bellae fuerunt feriae  
 8 a mane usque ad vesperum ! Quae mutatio rerum  
 9 instat ! Pauci erunt dies feriati, multi profesti.

10 Ille profestus erit, per quem tria verba silentur :  
 Et qui festus erit, mane profestus erat.

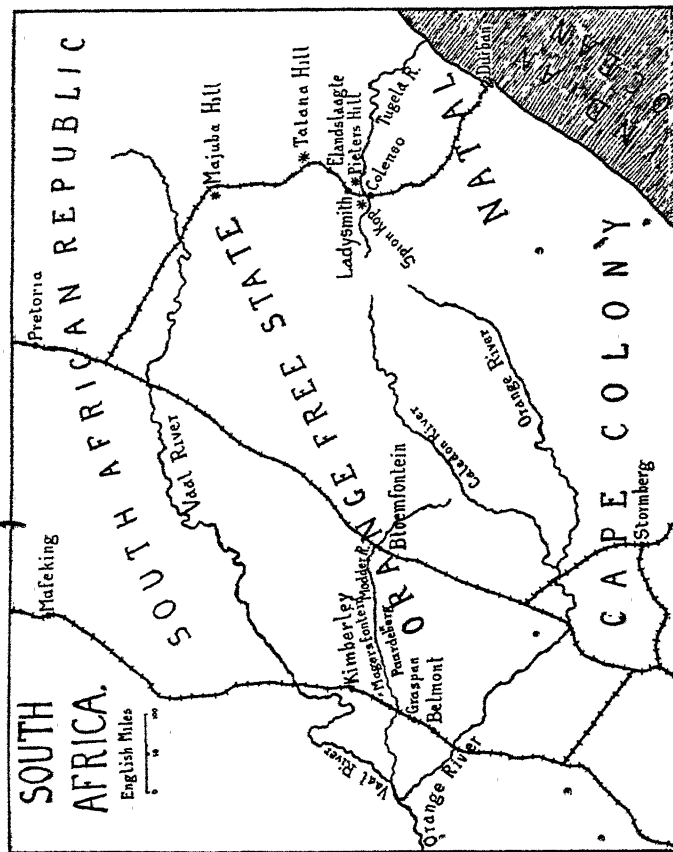
12 Nam tribus illis verbis tres res significantur quae  
 pueris carissimae sunt—pila, follis, trigon.

COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA  
AD ADVENTAM BELGARUM  
ANNIS MDCCCXCIX ET MDCCC.

X. Res Africanae.

[Recapitulation of Verbs.]

† 31. Kalendae sunt hodie Octobres. Apud  
magistrum meum iam septem dies sum. Qui, cum  
me vidit, "Salve" inquit; "ut vales? Fueruntne  
tibi feriae prosperae?" Et ego "Satis recte"  
inquam. Et ille "Ubi fuisti per ferias?" "In  
Cantio fui" inquam "apud patrum meum, qui  
te salvere iubet." "Num quid novi" inquit "inter  
ferias vidisti?" "Castellum Rutupinum" inquam  
"vidi: mecum una fuerunt Marcus et Alexander."  
"Recte" inquit; "num ostreas illic natas gusta-  
vistis?" "Nullas gustavimus" inquam; "sed  
cur interrogas?" "Quia temporibus antiquis  
ostreae Rutupinae praeclarae fuerunt" inquit.  
Et ego ridens "Piget me" inquam "quod mihi  
ante hunc diem nihil de re notum fuit." Tum ille  
"Num pater tuus" inquit "tibi ex Africa Meridiana  
litteras nuper dedit?" "Non dedit" inquam. Et  
ille "Magna discordia est" inquit "inter Ministrum  
nostrum qui Coloniae praest et Patrum Paulum,  
ut vocatur, cui cognomen est *Krüger*: is praefectus  
est Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum."



[Third Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

32. Tum ego "Quae est causa, quaeso, discordiae?" Et ille "Longum est dicere. Sed inter Britannos et colonos Batavos qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam colunt, multae fuerunt causae discordiarum. Nunc de peregrinis, qui Rempublicam Africanam incolunt, disputatur. De hac re litterae a Ministro nostro ad Patrum Paulum et ab hoc ad illum iam per multos menses mittuntur. Sed aquam perdimus: currit hora. Patruus Paulus in hunc modum scribit: 'Peregrinos illos' inquit 'in civitatem non admitto, quia nimis multi sunt, et quia non boni cives erunt.' Et re vera plures sunt numero quam cives Batavi. 'Tantam multitudinem' inquit 'in qua sunt non solum Britanni sed etiam Americani, Germani, Francogalli, Helvetii, Iudaei, ceteri, in civitatem admittere non possum.' Sed Minister noster sic dicit: 'Oportet eos admittere: nam nos Britanni peregrinos, qui in Coloniam nostram migrant, omnes in civitatem admittimus. Cur igitur Britanni qui in rempublicam vestram migrant in civitatem non admittuntur?' Sed Patruus Paulus 'Haec omnia ad Britanniam non pertinent,' inquit: 'Britannos res suas curare oportet.' Difficilis est quaestio. Sed maxima causa irae est quod Batavi peregrinos iniuriis contumeliisque vexant; ignavos vocant, quibus usus armorum denegatus est."

## XI. Origo Reipublicae Africanae.

[Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

33. Postridie nos pueri, qui classis quartae

discipuli sumus, magistrum de origine Reipublicae Africanae Batavorum interrogavimus. "Qui sunt illi coloni?" inquit; "quid significat nomen ipsum *Boer*?" Et ille "Coloni illi Africani" inquit "originem suam a Batavis Europaeis ducunt. Nomen *Boer* lingua Batava nihil aliud significat quam 'agricolam' vel 'colonum.' Caesar 'insulam Batavorum' in libro quarto Belli Gallici commemorat. Ea insula inter Rhenum et Vahalens iacebat: nam Rhenus, ubi in Oceanum influebat, in duo flumina dividebatur, sicut nunc quoque dividitur, quorum unum Vahalens nominabatur. Insulae quae inter haec flumina iacebant 'a nationibus feris barbarisque' incolebantur, ut Caesar dicit. Martialis, poeta Romanus, eos homines magnis et robustis membris, capillis flavis vel rufis fuisse dicit. Tacitus Batavos omnium nationum Germaniae Inferioris fortissimos fuisse dicit; ex interioribus partibus Germaniae propter discordiam domesticam migraverant. Insula eorum pars imperii Romani erat; sed Batavi acerrimi defensores libertatis suae fuerunt. Tributum Romanum non tolerabant."

[Imperative Active of the Third Conjugation.]

- 1 34. "Itaque, ut Tacitus dicit, 'manebat honor
- 2 et antiquae societatis insigne.' Vos pueri capita undetricesimum Germaniae et duodecimum libri
- 4 quarti Historiarum legite. In usum proeliorum reservabantur, et in exercitibus Romanis militabant. Periti erant natandi. Cohors Batavorum, quae in exercitu Agricolae militabat, quondam trans fretum in Monam insulam natavit.

† Nos Britanni quoque originem nostram praecipue a populis Germanicis ducimus : nam Angli et Saxones, qui quinto saeculo in Britanniam infundebantur, nationes Germaniae Inferioris erant. Et iam ante tempora C. Iulii Caesaris multi Germani in Britanniam meridianam migraverant : nam Belgas Germanica origine fuisse Caesar dicit, et a Belgis Venta Belgarum nomen suum ducit. Itaque nos Britanni cognati sumus colonorum Batavorum. Origine et nos et illi Germani sumus : animo quoque germanos esse nos oportet. Nam nomen Germanorum nihil aliud significat quam ‘ fratres.’ Multum valet communio sanguinis.”

† 35. “ Batavi, qui regionem trans Vahalem sitam incolunt, Coloniam nostram Africanam quondam incolebant. Sed abhinc annos quinque et sexaginta magna discordia erat ; et Batavi trans flumen illud Africanum migraverunt, quod ex flumine Europaeo Vahalem nominaverunt, et novam rempublicam sub principatu et patrocinio Britannico condiderunt, cui nomen Reipublicae Africanae dederunt. Ex quo tempore multae discordiae fuerunt inter nos et illos colonos. Abhinc annos duodeviginti bellum fuit, in quo Batavi victoriam a parvo exercitu Britannico in colle Maiuba reportaverunt. Qua ex re magnos sibi spiritus in re militari sumunt. Dicunt se Britannos bello vincere et in mare pellere posse. Haec somnia sunt ; sed periculum est belli domestici. Nam multi ex Batavis qui Coloniam nostram incolunt novis rebus student. Societatem quandam condiderunt cui nomen est Societati Africanae ; cuius consilium est omnes Batavos qui

Africam Meridianam incolunt in unam Rempublicam Batavam consociare. Nobis Britannis necesse est principatum nostrum totius Africae Meridianae  
 23 obtinere, et imperium Britannicum, tantis laboribus  
 24 conditum, defendere.”

## XII. Initium Belli.

[Third Conjugation—Future, Active and Passive.]

1 36. Magnum periculum belli esse magister noster  
 2 dicit. “In litteris” inquit “quas praefectus Britan-  
 nicus nuper ex Terra Natali dedit, Batavi magnas  
 4 copias conscribere nuntiantur. Nos duodecim tan-  
 tum milia militum in Terra Natali habemus; in  
 6 exercitu Batavorum multo plures sunt. Copias  
 7 maiores mox mittemus, coloniae defendendae  
 causa; sed si Batavi exercitum suum in Terram  
 9 Natalem ducent, quid prohibebit eos totam coloniam  
 10 percurrere, dum copiae nostrae in mari erunt? Magnum exercitum in India habemus; sed is ad  
 12 hoc bellum non mittetur.” Sic dicit magister noster. Sed nos pueri bellum non formidamus. Colonias  
 14 nostras ‘robur et aes triplex’ navium longarum  
 15 Britannicarum defendet. ‘Etiam atque etiam  
 16 pugnabimus et vincemus’ ut est in carmine nostro  
 Anglico. Britannia est domina undarum. Si  
 bellum erit, pater meus ex Colonia litteras, ad me  
 19 mox mittet, ut spero. Litteras quas scribet ad  
 20 patrum meum mittam; nam eas libenter leget.  
 21 Postea has et alias litteras colligam et in commen-  
 tarios meos exscribam. En litterarum ipsarum  
 exemplum!



[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with s.]

37. PATRUUS ANTONIO SUO SALUTEM DICIT.

Si vales, bene est ; ego valeo. Ex Africa semper  
aliquid novi ! Sic dicebant Graeci, et hodie quoque  
verum est. Nam Batavi summa audacia ad nos  
litteras ultimas miserunt, in quo bellum nobis  
indixerunt, nisi copias nostras, quae in coloniis  
nostris Africanis quaeque adhuc in mari sunt, intra  
diem deduxerimus. O audaciam singularem Ste-  
phani Joannis Pauli, qui praefectus Reipublicae  
Africanæ est ! Nos nihil respondebimus ; nullas  
copias deducemus ; immo maiores mittemus. Quae  
est causa tantæ audaciæ, tantæ stultitiæ ? Sed  
bellum non parvum erit. Batavi sexaginta milia  
virorum habebunt. Nam Orangia, cui nomen est  
Liberae Civitati, se cum Republica Africana con-  
sociavit, et magnam multitudinem virorum ad  
bellum promisit. Mirum est quod hæc civitas  
nobis bellum indixit. Nam nulla causa discordiæ  
est inter nos et Orangiam. Amita tua tibi multam  
salutem dicit. Cura te diligenter. Vale. Die  
quinto ante Idus Octobres scripsi.

[Third Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any  
suffix.]

38. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM DICIT. \*

Si vales, bene est ; ego et mater tua valemus.

‘ Africa terribili tremuit horrida terra tumultu.’

Num verum illum poetae antiqui legisti ? Hodie  
quoque dici potest. Duobus in proeliis hostes vici-

\* Hæc litteræ Idibus Novembribus in Angliam redditæ sunt.

5 mus, et Terram Natalem, ut poteramus, defendimus.  
 6 Primam victoriam die tertio decimo ante Kalendas  
 7 Novembres ad Collem Talanam reportavimus, qui  
 in angulo Terrae Natalis situs est. Hostes copias  
 9 suas in colle collegerant; sed duae cohortes Hi-  
 10 bernicae et una Anglica impigre procucurrerunt et  
 11 hostes ex colle pepulerunt. Sed legatus Britannicus,  
 12 graviter vulneratus, post proelium exspiravit.  
 Postridie alter exercitus Britannicus hostes ad  
 14 Saltum Cervinum, inter Collem Talanam et Castra  
 Mariana situm, vicit. Batavi tum quoque in monti-  
 16 bus stabant; per totum diem et nostri et hostes for-  
 17 tissime pugnaverunt; sub vesperum tres cohortes  
 Anglorum et Scotorum una cum manu equitum  
 19 Africanorum levis armaturae montes ascenderunt et  
 hostes in fugam dederunt. Batavi duo tormenta  
 21 amiserunt una cum vexillo in quo erat insigne Rei-  
 publicae Batavae Consociatae. Vale, mi carissime,  
 23 et scribe mox ad nos. Haec ex Colonia die  
 24 septimo ante Kalendas Novembres scripsi.

[Third Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, Fut. Perf., Passive.]

### 39. PATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM.<sup>1</sup>

1 S.V.B.E.E.V. Has litteras, mi fili, non libenter  
 leges. Nam de fortuna mutata dicam. Nostri  
 post victorias illas, de quibus in prioribus litteris  
 scripsi, loca obtinere non poterant. Itaque  
 5 copiae nostrae reductae sunt et circum Castra  
 6 Mariana collectae; ubi die tricesimo mensis Octobris  
 7 proelium ante oppidum commissum est. Quo in  
 proelio nostri laboraverunt. Sed opportune accidit

<sup>1</sup> Litterae die tertio et vicesimo mensis Novembris redditae.

quod nonnulla tormenta navalia, quae classarii nostri, in ipso tempore apportaverant, nostris 10 auxilio fuerunt. Post proelium autem magnum incommodum nuntiatum est. Nam proxima nocte 11 duae cohortes nostrorum in collem, qui ad septentriones situs est, missae erant, loci occupandi 12 causa. Sed in itinere mulis, qui tormenta nostra trahebant, terror subito incidit, et omnes velut 13 furore acti in fugam se dederunt, arma virosque in tenebris praecipitantes. Postridie mane nostri se 14 in loco iniquo esse viderunt: ab hostibus undique circumdati erant. Fortiter sed frustra se 15 defenderunt, et tandem coacti sunt se dedere. Haec 16 Nonis Novembribus scripsi. 17 18 19 20 21 22

### XIII. Milites Reginae.

[Fourth Conjugation—Present, Active and Passive.]

40. Hodie dies est tertius mensis Novembris. Nos pueri multa de bello audimus. Veniunt fere 2 cotidie litterae ab amicis nostris, quae magno studio leguntur et custodiuntur. Magnopere nos 3 delectat de 'Mililibus Reginae' audire et cantare. Hodie magister noster, postquam in scholam venit 4 "Audite, pueri," inquit "quod in actis diurnis 5 legi. Batavi copias nostras circumdederunt. 6 Castra Mariana duodecim milia nostrorum cus- 7 todiant. Sed non facile erit oppidum munire. In 8 campo iacet, quem colles undique circumdant. In collibus Batavi tormenta sua magna posuerunt, 9 unde missilia omnis generis in oppidum effundere poterunt. Numero nostros multum superant. 10 Sed quinquaginta milia virorum in Africam Meridianam nuper emisimus." 11 12

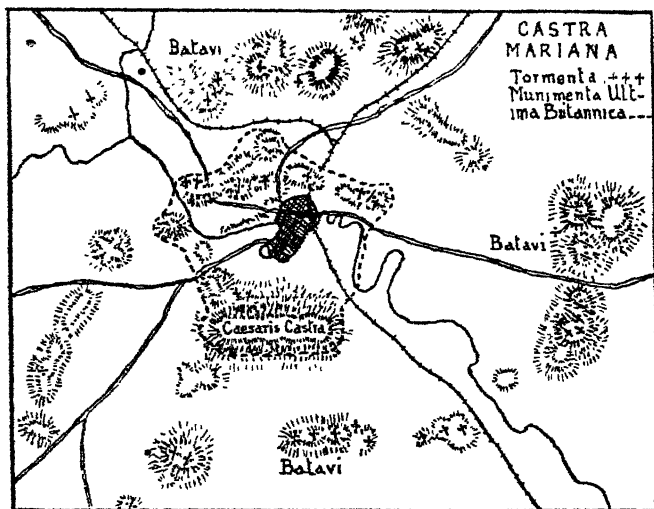
[Fourth Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

41. "Sed cur non multo ante" inquit "bellum paravimus? Nam proverbium est 'in pace bellum para.' Crebri nuntii de periculo belli veniebant. Batavos enim bellum per multos annos parare audiebamus: urbes suas muniebant, milites ex omnibus partibus Europae conscribebant. Sed nos nihil paravimus. Nesciebamus enim periculum verum esse. Nunc scimus: sed num sero scimus? Magnum exercitum nuper emisimus: sed quando in Africam Meridianam adveniet? Num ante adventum exercitus nostri de aliis victoriis Batavorum audiemus? Quis Terram Natalem a Batavis custodiet, dum exercitus noster in mari erit? Nam sex milia milium passuum sunt inter nos et Promunturium Spei Bonae. Hostibus autem tota regio ubi pugnabitur, omnia vada omnium fluminum nota sunt."

[Fourth Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

42. Hodie, qui est dies decimus mensis Novembris, de adventu in Africam Meridianam unius ex magnis illis navibus, quae 'Castella' nominantur, audivimus. A portu nostro Anglico ad Promunturium Spei Bonae intra viginti dies navigaverat. Heri advenit, et statim ad Portum Natalem missa est, quo intra paucos dies perveniet. Sed Castra Mariana ducenta fere milia passuum a Portu Natali distant. In illa autem navi est una cohors eorum qui patriam vocantem audiverunt. Imperator noster, cui cognomen est *Buller*, pridie Kalendas

Novembres advenerat. Interea nostri Castra Mariana fortiter custodiverunt. Ea loca quae muniri poterant muniverunt. Opportune vero accidit quod tormenta illa navalia, quae ad proelium ante oppidum commissum in ipso tempore advenerunt, nunc in oppido sunt.



#### XIV. Tria Oppida Obsessa.

[Verbs in *no* with Infinitive in *erc*—Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

43. MATER FILIO SUO SALUTEM PLURIMAM.

S.V.B.E. Nos valemus. Has litteras, quas Nonis Decembribus scribebam, tu, mi Antoni, non ante ferias Natales accipies : et omnia quae scribere

poteram, iam ante adventum litterarum mearum  
 5 audiveris. Sed pauca verba ad te mittere cupiebam.  
 6 Cur tam diu nihil litterarum a te? Ut vales? Quid  
 tu et condiscipuli tui, Marcus et Alexander, inter  
 8 ferias facietis? Mox a te litteras accipiemus, ut  
 9 spero. Nos magnum dolorem ex bello capimus.  
 Batavi Castra Mariana iam plus quam triginta dies  
 11 obsident. Oppidum capere magnopere cupiunt,  
 12 et fortasse capient. Noctes diesque missilia omnis  
 13 generis in oppidum iaciunt, et impetus in nostros  
 14 faciunt. Nostri autem quid facere possunt? Deficit  
 cibus, deficit aqua. Vix somnum capere possunt.  
 16 Necesse est eis cuniculos et puteos in terra fodere.  
 17 Eo se recipiunt si tormenta Batavorum audiuntur;  
 18 sed pauci tormentis interficiuntur. Sic litterae,  
 quae per columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Et duo  
 alia oppida Britannica, Adamantopolis et Statio  
 Bechuanarum, a Batavis obsidentur. Tu vero  
 mox rescribe. Etiam atque etiam vale.

### XV. Victoriae et Clades Britannicae.

[Verbs in *io* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

1 44. *Idibus Decembribus scriptum.* Intra hos  
 viginti dies de tribus victoriis atque duabus  
 3 cladibus Britannicis nuntium accepimus. Exer-  
 citus Britannicus, in quo octo milia virorum erant,  
 per fines Orangiae iter faciebat, Adamantopolim  
 obsidione liberandi causa. Viā per campos latos  
 et apertos ducebat; sed nonnullis in locis tumuli  
 8 erant, quos necesse erat superare. Hos Batavi,  
 9 velut aquilae nidos suos, insederant, et viam  
 custodiebant. Sed nostri impetus in eos fortissime

fecerunt, tumulos ceperunt, hostes in fugam con- 11  
iecerunt. Quibus in proeliis, ad Montem Bellum et 12  
Lacum Gramineum pugnatis, Custodes Regales et  
classiarii nostri praecipuam laudem reportaverunt.  
Inde iter ad Flumen Turbulentum inceptum. 15  
Dux autem Batavus, cui nomen est *Cronje*, in ripis  
fluminis magnas fossas puteosque foderat, in 17  
quibus copias suas et tormenta occultaverat. Ibi  
~~per~~ totum diem acerrime pugnatum est. Batavi 19  
circiter quingentos ex nostris interfecerunt vel 20  
vulneraverunt. Tandem nostri impetum in sinis-  
tram partem fluminis fecerunt, et se traiecerunt. 22  
Tum Batavi se ex proelio receperunt. 23

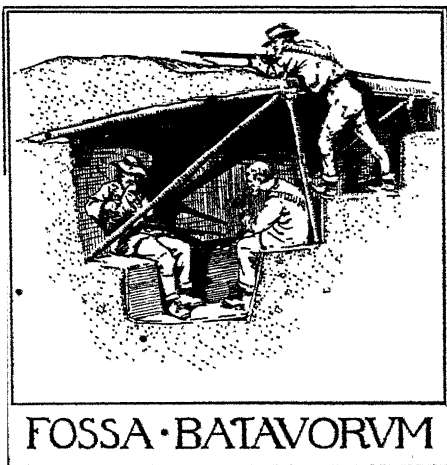
† 45. Haec victoria die duodetricesimo mensis No-  
vembris reportata est. De qua patruus meus mihi  
haec scripsit:—"Victoria nostris non magno usui  
erat, quia hostibus instare non poterant. Nam  
legatus Britannicus nullos equites habebat. Pedites 5  
nostri ad huiusmodi bellum minus apti sunt.  
Batavis, sicut Britannis antiquis, non mos est iusto 7  
proelio pugnare. Equites eorum arma peditum por-  
tant et pedibus pugnare possunt. Itaque mobili- 9  
tatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis prae-  
stant."—Exercitus noster iam viginti tantum milia 10  
passuum ab oppido obsesso aberat. Sed inter castra 11  
nostra et Adamantopolim mons erat, Macrifontium  
nomine, quem necesse erat superare. Legatus nos-  
ter quattuor cohortes Caledonum praemisit, loci 16  
occupandi causa. Sed Batavus suos in fossis, quas  
ante montem foderat, in insidiis posuerat. De magna  
clade Britannica accepta in actis diurnis haec legi. 18

† 46. "Silentio noctis per tenebras et imbrem Caledones agmine quadrato ad locum iter faciunt. Subito aër ignibus tonitruque tremit; hostis autem nusquam conspicitur. Sed ex omnibus fossis imber mortifer missilium in ordines nostros effunditur, et puncto temporis ducenti vel trecenti ex viris  
7 illis fortissimis una cum legato mortui vel vulnerati  
8 iacuerunt. Nostri in insidias inciderant. In tenebris autem nullus erat usus oculorum; nec imperia in tanto tumultu audiri vel accipi poterant. Ordines  
11 igitur nostri perturbati et confusi sunt; arma virique, alius super alium, praecipitabantur: non proelium  
13 sed trucidatio fuit. Nostri ex loco mortifero, ut poterant, se receperunt, vel viam per medios hostes facere contenderunt. Plus quam septingentos viros ex quattuor illis cohortibus amisimus." Haec clades mane diei undecimi mensis Decembris  
18 accepta est. Pridie alia cladis Britannica ex Colonia  
19 nuntiata erat. Alius exercitus Britannicus ad Montem Procellarum in insidias inciderat, et victus  
21 erat. Nihil eorum quae apud nos agebantur hostibus ignotum erat. Nam exploratores omnia indicaverant.

† 47. Feriae Natales adventant. Intra tres dies apud patrum meum ero. Dulce domum! Sed feriae non hilarae erunt. Nam de tertia clade, in Terra Natali accepta, acta diurna haec nuntiant:—"Mag-  
5 nus ille exercitus Britannicus, cui imperator noster  
6 praeest, plus quam viginti milia virorum numero, Castra Mariana obsidione liberare contendebat. Inter nostros et oppidum fluebat Tugela, quem Batavi oc-



cupaverant et in ripis fossas suas mortíferas foderant. Mane diei quinti decimi mensis Decembris imperator noster quattuor legiones suas ad proelium eduxit. Caelum caeruleum et serenum erat ; magnus calor solis. Legio Hibernica, quae in sinistro cornu erat, ad 13  
ripas fluminis fortissime appropinquavit ; sed postquam quingentos vel sexcentos viros amiserunt, se recipere coacti sunt. In dextro cornu tormenta nostra defensoribus nudata sunt ; quorum decem ab hostibus capta sunt, postquam ei qui tormentis ministrabant paene omnes interfecti sunt. Sed 20  
duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum e loco mortifero recepit. Facinus pulcherrimum fuit. In ea manu fuit adulescens egregiae spei, nomine *Roberts.* Fuit : nam is quoque, graviter vulneratus, postero die exspiravit. In eo proelio mille ducentos viros amisimus.



## XVI. Foedus nominis Britannici.

[Present Injunctive of *sum*.]

48. Hodie Dies Natalis est Christi. Ante paucos dies novus imperator Britannicus ad Promunturium Spei Bonae navigavit. De quo patruus meus haec dixit:—"In hoc viro summa est scientia belli, clarissima virtus, egregia fortuna. Magnum sibi quondam nomen in India fecit; nunc senex est, 7 septem et sexaginta annos natus. Et pater est 8 illius adulescentis qui ad Tugelam cecidit dum 9 facinus pulchrum et periculosum facit. Pater mortem filii sui deplorat; sed patriam ipsam vocem 11 cantem audivit. Sit ei iter prosperum! Sit in illo nomine Spei Bonae omen rerum prosperarum! 13 Nam nomen est omen, ut poeta Romanus dixit. 14 Quondam Promunturium Procellarum vocabatur. Exercitui maximo ducentorum milium virorum praeerit. Numquam post hominum memoriam tantus exercitus trans mare transportatus est, 18 quantum nunc emisimus. Quod reipublicae nostrae prosit!"

[Present Injunctive of First Conjugation.]

49. Postridie patruus meus haec ex actis diuinis 2 recitavit:—"Ex Africa Meridiana nihil novi. Sed 3 magnitudo populi Britannici prope admirabilior in rebus adversis quam in prosperis fuit. Opus magni laboris erit, tot atque tam validos hostes vincere. 6 Sed etiam atque etiam pugnemus, donec vicerimus. 7 Deus nobis fortunam det! Ne desperemus! 8 Festinemus lente, sicut Fabius ille Maximus fecit, 9 de quo poeta Romanus haec scripsit:

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem. 10

Hoc bellum Britanniam, matrem tot filiarum  
egregiarum, cum coloniis suis in unius et maioris 12  
populi corpus consociavit.

Una dum regina nostra est, unus in Reginam amor, 14  
Unum foedus omnis esto nominis Britannici ! 15

Sic una voce exclamat Maior illa Britannia,  
cui sol numquam occidit. Coloniae autem nostrae 17  
liberae maximam sibi laudem esse iudicant, dicere 18  
posse : •

Filia matris in domo, 20  
Domina sum tamen domi.

Tu, Canada, duo milia filiorum tuorum misisti. 22  
Vos, Coloniae Australienses, cum Nova Zelanda et  
Tasmania octo milia misistis. Tu, Terra Natalis,  
quae filia Britanniae natu minima es, quinque 25  
milia dedisti. Quam vera sunt verba Horatii ! 26

Caelum non animum mutant qui trans mare currunt. 27

Et in Britannia ipsa magna multitudo voluntari-  
orum nomina sua dederunt. Deus salvam praestet 29  
Reginam ! ”

## XVII. Post tenebras lux.

[Present Subjunctive of *sum* and First Conjugation.]

50. Initium est novi anni. Batavos piget  
Castra Mariana iam duos menses obsidere ; nostros  
quoque obsideri piget. Hostes igitur operam dant 4  
ut oppidum vi expugnent, et diem constituunt quo 5  
impetum in Caesaris Castra dent, quae ad meridiem  
oppidi iacent. De qua re patruus meus haec

recitavit :—“Silentio noctis pedibusque nudis  
collem ascendere incipiunt. Sed Mancun<sup>i</sup>enses  
nostri ad arma volant. Ad decimam horam diei  
10 pugnatur, quo tempore tantus imber cadit, ut sol  
11 nebulis obscoretur. Tum impetum, tam acrem in  
12 Batavos faciunt ut eos propulsent et castra salva  
13 praestent. Pulcherrimum erat facinus. Sed in  
oppido summa inopia est, ut litterae, quae per  
columbas mittuntur, nuntiant. Cibus carissim<sup>us</sup>  
est ; nulli iam boves, nullae oves, nulli porci in  
17 oppido sunt. Carne equina victitant. Multi  
18 homines aegrotant ; sed ubi nullae vaccae sunt, lac  
19 deest. Gallinae denariis viginti constant, duo-  
decim ova triginta denariis, cetera grandi pretio.  
Navis aëria nonnumquam ex oppido emittitur, ut  
22 quae apud hostes aguntur explorentur. Ex qua



nostri feminas Batavas cum festo ornatu nonnumquam vident, quae via ferrata apportantur, ut obsidionem spectent." Navis aëria ita facta est<sup>25</sup> ut ad terram applicetur, si necesse sit. Nam cum<sup>26</sup> aëre plena est, in caelum ascendit; cum aër emititur, descendit.

### XVIII. Adamantopolis obsidione liberata.

• † 51. *Die septimo decimo mensis Februarii scriptum.*

Magnum hodie gaudium per totam Britanniam est. Nam Adamantopolis obsidione liberata est! Imperator novus vincere scit. Initio mensis<sup>3</sup> Februarii Caledones emittit, qui ab oriente impetum in Batavos dent; interea quinque milibus<sup>4</sup> equitum Anglorum et Australiensium imperat, ut<sup>5</sup> ab occidente ad oppidum obsessum equitent.<sup>6</sup> Itaque, dum Batavus cum Caledonibus proelium committit, equites noctu iter incipiunt. Per tres dies calorem solis et pulverem tolerant; multi viri et equi calore et labore interficiuntur. Tandem die quinto decimo mensis Februarii incolae oppidi pulverem solito densiorem in campis latis et apertis<sup>13</sup> conspiciunt. Equites ad oppidum appropinquant.<sup>14</sup> Sed vestimenta eorum incolis oppidi ignota erant. Itaque ei qui in statione ante oppidum erant "Salvi sitis!" inquit "sed qui estis? unde<sup>17</sup> venitis?" Et equites "Ex Australia venimus" inquit "ut oppidum vestrum obsidione liberemus!" "Deo sit gratia" inquit ille; "nam<sup>20</sup> obsidionem iam per tres menses toleravimus."—Omen est in illo nomine Adamantopolis. Nam<sup>22</sup> 'adamanta movere' proverbium est.<sup>23</sup>

[Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of other Conjugations.]

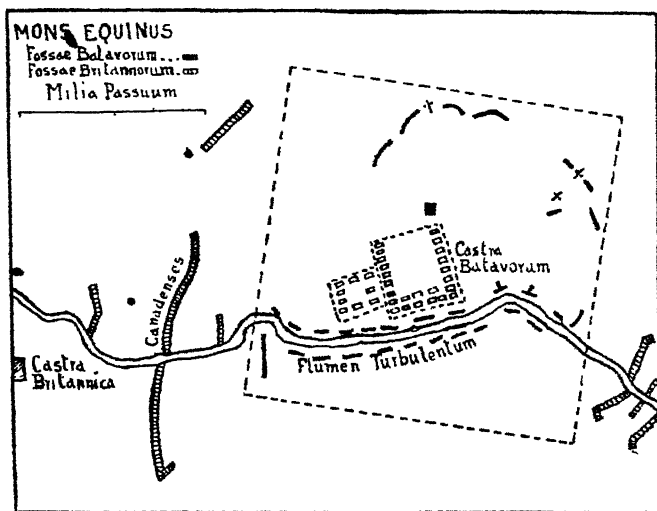
52. AMITA ANTONIO SUO MULTAM SALUTEM DICIT.

S.V.B.E.E.V. Litterae tuae me magnopere  
2 delectaverunt. De Adamantopoli obsidione liberata  
nos quoque gaudio triumphamus. In imperatore  
4 nulla est mora. Num acta diurna legis? Noster  
5 quinque et viginti milia virorum emisit, qui Bata-  
6 vum a meridiana parte oppugnent, dum equites illi  
qui Adamantopolim obsidione liberaverunt eum a  
8 septentrionibus itinere prohibeant. Sed videat  
9 imperator noster ne quid detrimenti respublica  
10 capiat! Animo anxia sum. Nam dies ille Maiu-  
bensis appropinquat, quo abhinc annos undeviginti  
coloni Batavi exercitum Britannicum vicerunt.  
Dies erat septimus et vicesimus mensis Februarii.  
14 Deus omen avertat! Deus prohibeat ne hic dies  
15 nobis iterum ater sit! Det ut hoc anno nos  
16 hostes vincamus! Patruus tuus rogat ut tibi suis  
17 verbis salutem dicam. Tu cura ut valeas. Haec  
ego die vicesimo mensis Februarii scripsi.

### XIX. Dies Maiubensis.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

53. Kalendae sunt hodie Martiae. Victoria per  
totum imperium Britannicum conclamatur! Nam  
duas magnas victorias a Batavis reportavimus.  
4 In finibus Orangiae noster venit, vidit, vicit. Bata-  
vus castra sua ad Montem Equinum moverat, ubi in  
ripis Fluminis Turbulenti fossas cuniculosque more  
7 suo foderat, in quibus sui tuti essent. Ibi noster  
8 eum velut indagine circumdedit, ne evadere posset.



Batavi se per decem dies fortissime defenderunt. Sed frustra. Nostri quoque fossas contra fossas Batavorum foderunt; has ita cotidie propius moverunt, ut tandem septingentos tantum passus a fossis Batavorum abessent. Postremo duae centuriae Canadensium noctu etiam propius appropinquaverunt, et ibi novas fossas foderunt. Tum Batavus salutem desperavit, et postridie se cum toto exercitu suo dedit. Dies erat Maiubensis. Quattuor milia captivorum in Coloniam missi sunt. Regina nostra populo Canadensi litteras misit, in quibus admirationem tantae virtutis significat, et mortem tot virorum fortium deplorat. De imperatore nostro Marcus hunc versum scripsit:

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

[Past Imperfect Subjunctive of First, Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations.]

54. Altera victoria eius diei in Terra Natali  
2 reportata est, ubi Fabius ille noster operam  
3 dabat ut Castra Mariana obsidione liberaret. Bis  
4 iam flumen Tugelam traiecerat, ut hostes loco mov-  
5 eret et viam ad oppidum obsessum faceret. Sed bis  
6 coactus erat ut suos reduceret. De quibus ex-  
peditionibus patruus meus ad me haec scripsit :—  
“ Via trans montes tam altos et difficiles ducebat,  
9 ut pauci multos itinere facile prohiberent. Sed  
nostri per tres menses tantam virtutem prae-  
stiterunt, ut calorem, pruina, imbrem, inopiam,  
12 vulnera, mortem aequo atque hilario animo toler-  
13 arent, montes altissimos ascenderent, loca iniquis-  
14 sima caperent, omnem vim et impetum belli sus-  
tinerent. Haec facilia ex difficillimis magnitudo  
16 animi reddidit ; ut omnes homines de tanta forti-  
17 tudine cum admiratione audirent, iudicarentque  
nullos milites umquam fortius sanguinem suum  
19 pro patria profudisse. Et quamquam ter frustra  
20 contenderant, ut hostes ex illis montibus pellerent,  
tamen audacia vere Britannica constituerunt ut  
22 etiam atque etiam pugnarent, donec vincerent.”

1 † 55. Et vicerunt. Nam postquam die altero  
et vicesimo mensis Februarii legio Hibernica flumen  
ab oriente traiecit, ut collem Petreium, in quo  
Batavi stabant, caperet, die septimo et vicesimo  
totus exercitus Britannicus traiecit et cum Batavis  
proelium commisit. Tam acriter pugnatum est ut  
ex nostris mille sescenti viri amitterentur. Tandem



sub noctem colles illos omnes cepimus et hostes in fugam coniecimus. Postero die manus equitum Britannicorum in oppidum, iam quattuor menses obsessum, equitavit. Magnum erat gaudium et obsessorum et eorum qui oppidum obsidione liberaverant. Et maius fortasse est gaudium totius imperii Britannici. O diem pulchrum, quo per virtutem militum nostrorum et oppido illi obesso et patriae nova lux affulsit! Nobis pueris propter duas illas victorias dies feriatuſ datus est, quo scholis liberi essemus. Noctu schola nostra ignibus festis illustrata est; et magistri et pueri insignia triumphalia in memoriam Montis Equini et Castrorum Marianorum fabricata gerebant.

## XX. Pax Britannica.

† 56. PATER FILIO SUO CARISSIMO SALUTEM.

Hodie, mi fili, tibi longas litteras scribere in animo habeo. Plus quam tres menses sunt ex quo exercitus Batavus ad Montem Equinum captus est, et copiae nostrae victrices Florifontium, caput Orangiae, intraverunt. Nunc vexillum Britannicum Praetoriae, in ipso capite Reipublicae Africanae, salutavimus. Vos, qui in Britannia habitatis, gaudere scio. Sed quanto gaudio nos, qui per tot annos hunc diem exspectavimus, triumphare putatis? Narrabo tibi: abhinc annos undeviginti, post cladem illam Maiubensem, Britanni, qui Praetoriae habitabant, vexillum Britannicum velut mortuum humaverunt. In monumento inscriptum est 'In memoriam vexilli Britannici carissimi, quod anno millesimo octin-

gentesimo octogesimo primo vita decessit, quatuor annos natum. Resurgam.' Resurrexit. Hodie omnia plena sunt laetitiae. Statio illa Bechuanarum, quae per septem menses obsidionem tanta fortitudine, animo tam hilario sustinuerat, obsidione liberata est. Tibi, dux fortissime, qui oppidum prospere defendisti, gratias agimus maximas. Bene vertat, quod agas! Floreat Domus Carthusiana, in qua educatus es!

Sed eos quoque memoria teneamus, qui pro patria pugnantes vitam exspiraverunt. Solum Africanum Britanniae et coloniarum Britannicarum commune sepulchrum est. Monumentum in memoriam filii imperatoris nostri ad Tugelam factum nuper vidi: in quo haec verba sunt—

IN MEMORIAM  
FREDERICI HUGONIS SHERSTON ROBERTS  
QUI DIE XVIII ANTE KAL. IAN. A. S. MDCCCXCIX VULNUS MORTIFERUM ACCEPIT

DUM FACINUS EGREGIUM ET AUDAX FACIT  
PROPTER QUOD CRUCIS VICTORIANAE DECUS MERUIT.  
AD TUGELAM DIE XVII A. S. MDCCCXCIX EXSPIRAVIT.



Vita eius brevis sed non imperfecta fuit. Nam quid pulchrius est quam pro patria pugnantes vitam exspirare? Tu, mi fili, exemplum tantae virtutis memoria tene. Ab his et huiusmodi viris

imperium Britannicum conditum est et conservabitur. Floreat Etona, ubi adulescens ille fortissimus educatus est !

Quid est imperium Britannicum ? Societas populorum et nationum, quae communione beneficiorum officiorumque continetur. Bella enim pro sociis coloniisque sumuntur et geruntur ; coloniae pro Britannia, communi omnium Britannorum parente, sanguinem suum profundere paratae sunt. Nam principatus Britannicus imperium et libertatem, res quondam inter se contrarias, consociat. Itaque illud patrociniū orbis terrarum verius 53 quam imperium nominari oportet. Videamus, mi 54 fili, ne, ut maioribus nostris pulcherrimum fuit 55 tantam nobis gloriam imperii tradere, sic nobis 56 turpissimum sit id quod accepimus obtinere et 57 conservare non posse. Illud vero imperii nostri 58 firmissimum fundamentum est quod victos in 59 civitatem admittere possumus. Ianua nostra omnibus aperta est. Batavis, igitur, sicut aliis 61 populis victis, civibus Britannicis esse licet. Ex 62 hostibus socii aliquando fuerint, ut speramus ; quo tempore hanc sibi quisque maximam laudem iudicabit, ut de se dicere possit 'Civis Britannicus 63 sum,' et de Britannia—

Fecisti patriam diversis gentibus unam ! 67

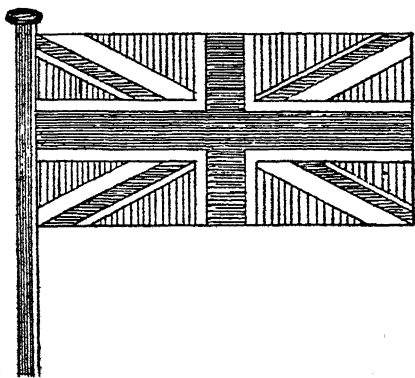
Nam quae Claudianus, poeta Romanus, de urbe Roma scripsit, ea etiam verius de Britannia dicere licet :— 68

70 Haec est, in gremium victos quae sola recepit,  
Humanumque genus communi nomine fovit, *f*  
73 Matris non dominae ritu; civesque vocavit  
74 Quos domuit, nexuque pio longinqua revinxit.  
75 Huius pacificis debemus moribus omnes  
Quod cuncti gens una sumus.

76 Nos, igitur, hodie, sicut olim Camillus ille  
Romanus, templum Concordiae consecremus, in  
78 quo haec verba inscribantur : PAZI ET LIBERTATI  
RESTITUTAE.

80 Bellavimus; esto.  
Sed cecidere odia, et tristes mors obruit iras.

Tu vero, fili mi carissime, bene vale, et me  
ama. Scripsi Nonis Iuniis, Anno Salutis MDCCCC.



## PREPARATIONS.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—The following "Preparations" are not intended to do the work of a vocabulary: they are of the nature of outline lessons on grammatical points, and therefore contain only (1) words presenting some new grammatical feature not previously studied, (2) constructions or phrases which call for special notice. In this respect these Preparations differ from those given in *Ora Maritima*. The pupil is now supposed to be capable of looking out unknown words in the Alphabetical Vocabulary (pp. 149-175).

In connexion with each new grammatical feature introduced, the necessary grammatical rules and tables are given; so that the pupil using this book has no need of a separate grammar.

The amount of grammar assumed as known at the start is that contained in *Ora Maritima*, viz., the first three Declensions of Nouns, Adjectives of similar formation (except those in—, *is*, *e* of the 3rd Declension), all the tenses of the Indicative Active of the 1st Conjugation and of the verb *sum*, and a few isolated forms of Pronouns (*me*, *mihi*; *te*, *tibi*; *se*, *sibi*; *nos*, *nobis*; *vos*, *vobis*).

ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS.—If the last syllable but one of a word of more than two syllables is *long*, it is also accented (thus: *remōtus*); if *short*, the accent is thrown back on to the last syllable but two (thus: *remōvet*, *remōvē*). Words of only two syllables are always accented on the first of the two (thus: *vīrēs*, *vīrum*). Very few Latin words are accented on the last syllable. The only one that occurs in this book is *adhūc*. This and similar words have lost a syllable, which explains the accentuation: *adhūc* stands for *adhū-ce*.

Syllables ending in two or more consonants are mostly long, as in *aperta*, *fenestra*; so too are syllables containing a double vowel, as in *nautae*. But many syllables ending in a single consonant and containing a single vowel are also long, because the vowel is itself a *long vowel*: all such long vowels are marked in the following Preparations. Thus *beata* and *antiqua* have the middle vowel long, and will therefore be marked *beāta*, *antīqua*; and it is because the middle syllable in each of these words has a long vowel in it that it is accented (*beāta*, *antīqua*). Vowels which do not bear any mark in the following Preparations may be regarded as short, as in *domina*, *amīta*, *casa*, *quoque*, *mea*, *tua* (accented *dōmina*, *āmīta*, *ēāsa*, *quōque*, *mēa*, *tūa*).

1. The words printed black are the grammatically important words—here Adjectives of the 3rd Decl. in —, *is*, *e*.

1. **Septembrēs**, 'September,' an Adjective agreeing with *Kalendae* and meaning 'seventh' or 'belonging-to-the-seventh month.' The Roman year originally began with March; hence September was then the seventh month. The literal translation of this sentence is 'To-day there are the September 'Calends,' = 'to-day is the 1st of September.'

3. *mensis* **Septembris**, 'of the September month' = 'of the month of S.'

7. **celebris**, 'celebrated,' agreeing with *ducis*. *Ducis* is Genitive, because it depends on *dē vitā*, just as *Agricolae* does; the meaning is 'about the life of Agricola, the life of the celebrated general.' A Noun standing in the same construction as another Noun is said to be 'in apposition' to it: thus *ducis* is here in apposition to *Agricolae*. But in English we should say, 'about the life of Agricola, the celebrated general,' without a second 'of.'

11. **alacri**, 'eager,' agreeing with *animō*. The Abl. without a Preposition here means 'with,' as in *magnā audaciā pugnābant*; see O.M.\* p. 143.

It will be seen that Adjectives like **September**, **October**, **November**, **December**, **celeber**, **alacer** differ from Adjectives like *fortis* in having a separate form for the Masculine Nominative Singular. This case is formed **without the ending -is**, and therefore resembles a Noun like *imber*, *rain* (stem *imbr-*).

**celeber, celebris, celebre, celebrated.**

	• SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc. and fem.	neut.
Nom.	<b>celeber</b>	<b>celebrīs</b>	<b>celebre</b>	<b>celebrēs</b>	<b>celebrē</b>
Acc.	<b>celebrem</b>		<b>celebre</b>	<b>celebrēs</b>	<b>celebria</b>
Gen.	<b>celebris</b>			<b>celebrum</b>	
Dat.	<b>celebrī</b>			<b>celebribus</b>	
Abl.					

## 2. [is, ea, id, Singular Number.]

1. *post-quam*, lit. 'after than' or 'later than' = 'after the time when' or simply 'when,' or 'after.' But it must be distinguished from the Preposition *post*, 'after'; cp. *post prandium*, l. 17.

\* The letters O<sub>4</sub>M. stand for *Ora Maritima* throughout these Preparations.

2. *pedestrēs* and *equestrēs*, from adjectives in —, *is*, *e*.

8. *id*, 'that-thing,' 'that.'      *eī*, 'for that man,' 'for him.'

9. *nōn rēvērā dēbellāverat*. The so-called 'Conquest of Britain' by Julius Caesar ought rather to be called 'The failure of Caesar to conquer Britain.' Britain was not conquered till nearly 100 years later. •

10. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his.'      *eum*, 'that-man,' 'him,' Accusative Case; *reportāv-isse*, Infinitive formed from the Perfect tense *reportāv-i* (the Perfect of *reportō*, 1st Conj.); the literal translation is 'Tacitus declares him not to have won a great victory.' This construction of the **Accusative with the Infinitive** (*eum reportāvisse*) depending on a verb of 'declaring' or 'thinking' is found in English as well as in Latin; but English generally prefers to use 'that' followed by a Nominative and a Verb: thus, 'Tacitus affirms (or says) that he did not win a great victory.' Cp. O.M. § 36, *Britanniam esse insulam iudicabant*, 'they judged Britain to be an island.'

14. *virī animō fortī*, 'men with brave mind' = 'men of brave mind'; cp. O.M. § 43, *virī membrīs rōbustis, flāvis capillīs, oculis caeruleis*. The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes a quality of the person spoken of, and may therefore be called an **Ablative of Quality** or **Adjectival Ablative**.

16. *C.* here stands for *Gāi* (as though it were a *G*).—The coin of Caesar here shown has a head of Venus on one side and on the other the figure of Aeneas carrying Anchises from Troy. Caesar traced his descent from Venus and Anchises.

19. *ēius*, 'of that,' agreeing with *belli*.

20. *eī*, 'to that-man,' 'to him.'      *Britannia nōn cūrae erat*, 'Britain was not a care': *cūrae* is Dative, lit. 'for a care' = 'a cause of anxiety' (§ 23).

22. *dē eā intrandā*, 'about it to-be-entered' = 'about entering it'; *eā* agrees with *insulā* understood, 'about that-island.' Cp. O.M. § 24, *locus idoneus est ad nāvigia applicanda*, 'for vessels to-be-brought-to-land.'

It will be seen that *is*, *ea*, *id* may be used as an Adjective (= 'that') or as a Pronoun (= 'that-one,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' etc.).

## is, ea, id—SINGULAR NUMBER.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id
Acc.	eum	eam	id
Gen.		ei	
Dat.		eī	
Abl.	eō	eā	eō

## 3. [is, ea, id, Singular and Plural Numbers.]

4. *eōrum*, 'of those,' agreeing with *rēgum*.

5. *eum*, 'that-man,' 'him'; cp. § 2, l. 10.

7. *eī*, 'to that-man,' 'to him'; cp. § 2, l. 8.

10. *eārum*, 'of those,' agreeing with *gentium*.

11. *in eis*, 'on those' (agreeing with *nummīs* understood), 'on them.'

12. *ei*, 'of that,' agreeing with *nōminis*.—On the first coin shown CUNO = Cunobelinus and CAMU = Camulodunum.

13. *ei*, 'of that-man,' 'of him,' 'his'; cp. § 2, l. 10. Translate 'of his father Tasciovanus.' (See name on second coin).

15. *eō tempore* (Abl). . . *cum*, 'at that time when,' 'at the time when.' The Ablative without a Preposition here denotes **Time when**, as in O.M. § 10, *secundō saeculō* 'in the second century.' The English Preposition to be used in translating such an Ablative is 'at' or 'in' or 'on' (as in 'on the 5th day').

17. *eī*, 'those' (agreeing with *principēs* understood), 'those-men,' 'they.' Note that the Nominative Case of this Pronoun, whether Singular or Plural, is not used in Latin except when there is some emphasis on the word; in the present sentence the translation 'they' requires some emphasis in English. Where no emphasis is required, the Nominative of a Pronoun meaning 'he,' 'she,' 'it' or 'they' is omitted altogether in Latin, as in § 1, l. 17, *saepe nōs visitant*, 'they-often visit us.'

19. *prae-erant imperiō Rōmānō* (Dat.); 'were-in-command to (=of) the Roman empire.'

20. *mortī datus*, 'put to death'; *dare* = 'to put'; see Vocab.

23. Caractacus (whom Tacitus more correctly calls *Caratacus*) and Togodumnus succeeded to their father's throne shortly before



the invasion of Britain by Claudius in A.D. 43. Togodumnus met his death in one of the battles fought in that year.

is, ea, id—PLURAL NUMBER.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	eī	eae	ea
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.)	eis		
Abl.)			

† 4. 1. is, 'that-man,' 'he' (emphatic), referring to *Cunobelinus*.

5. *ēius*, 'of that,' agreeing with *aetātis*.

6. *ēius*, 'of that' (agreeing with *insulae* understood), 'of it,' 'its.' *eōs*, 'those (inhabitants),' 'those-men,' 'them.'

11. *eīs*, 'to those-men,' 'to them.'

14. *eōrum*, 'of those-men,' 'of them,' 'their.'

† 5. [*ēius*, *eōrum*, *eārum*, contrasted with *suus*, *a*, *um*.]

3. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to Claudius, who is mentioned in the previous sentence.

6. *suīs*, 'his,' agreeing with *ducibus*, and referring to Claudius, who is spoken of in *this* sentence: for *mandāvit*, 'he entrusted,' means 'Claudius entrusted.'

8. *eae*, 'those' = 'those forces,' 'they,' with emphasis.

9. *oppidum Camulodūnum*, 'the town Colchester,' or, as we generally say, 'the town of Colchester.' This 'of' after 'town' is peculiar in English: we do not say 'the river of Thames.' In all such phrases Latin makes the Name agree in Case with the word for 'town,' 'river,' 'mountain,' etc. Thus *flūmen Tamesa* (§ 2), *flūmen Tamesam* (Accusative), *flūminis Tamesae* (Genitive), etc.

11. *ea*, 'that,' agreeing with *urbs* understood; 'that-city was the first Roman city in Britain.' The settlement (*colōnia*) of Roman soldiers was established at Colchester about A.D. 50: and after this the town was called a 'colony.'

13. *reporiōtam*, 'won,' an Adjective formed from the Verb *reporiō*, 'I win,' and agreeing with *victōriam*. Note the Latin order of words ('from the Britons won' = 'won from the Britons'). Similarly in English we may say "an exercise, *neatly written*, was handed in by me"; the Adjective 'written' being formed from the Verb 'I write.' *suō*, 'his' or 'his-own,' agreeing with *filiō*, and referring to *princeps Rōmānus*.

*nōmen Britannicō*, 'the name Britannicus'; but *Britannicō* does not agree with *nōmen* in Case; it is a Dative, and agrees with *filiō suō*, so that the literal translation is 'gave a name to his son, to Britannicus': cp. § 1, 1.7 (*ducis*).

14. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *princeps Rōmānus* in the previous sentence.

16. *sē*, 'themselves,' referring to the Britons ('they').

19. After the destruction of his dominion in the Eastern part of Britain in A.D. 43 Caractacus withdrew into Wales, where he gained many successes against the Romans.

20. *ēius*, 'of that-man,' 'his,' referring to *Caractacus* in the previous sentence.

22. *Virocōnī*, 'at Viroconium (Wroxeter)'; *Dēvae*, 'at Deva (Chester)'; *Iscae*, 'at Isca (Caerleon).' These Cases denoting 'at' are called **Locative Cases**; they are found chiefly in Names of Towns, which accordingly have one more Case than other Nouns. But the Locative is always the same in form as one of the other Cases; in the 1st and 2nd Declensions, Singular Number, it is the same in form as the Genitive. Note that there is no Preposition used to express 'at' before the Name of a Town.

25. *eōrum*, 'of those-men,' 'their,' referring to *Silurēs* in the previous sentence.

26. *Rōmam*, 'to Rome.' The Accusative of the Name of a Town without a Preposition is used to express 'to'; so in O.M. § 24, *Dubrās*, 'to Dover.' 'To Wroxeter' would be *Virocōnium*; 'to Chester,' *Dēvam*; 'to Caerleon,' *Iscae*.

The words *ēius* and *eōrum*, *eārum* are Genitive Cases of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and therefore mean properly 'of that-person' or 'of that-thing'; plural, 'of those-persons' or 'of those-things.' Hence they generally refer to some person or thing mentioned in a previous sentence. The Adjective *suus*, *a*, *um*, on the other hand, means properly 'his own,' or 'her own,' or 'its own,' or 'their own.' Hence it naturally refers to the most important person or thing mentioned in the same sentence; for we do not often say

'his own' when we are referring to a person or thing mentioned in a different sentence. For instance, we may say 'Claudius gave this name to his own son,' but not 'Claudius was the emperor of Rome And the Romans gave this name to his own son.'—The person or thing referred to by *suus*, *a*, *um* generally stands in the Nominative Case, but not always: for instance, we may say 'I will visit him in his own house' (*domi suae eum vīsītābō*, where *suae* refers to the Accusative *eum*): 'give to each man his own' (*suum cuique dā*, where *suum* refers to the Dative *cuique*).

6. [*ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, Singular and Plural.]

4. *ipsum*, 'himself,' agreeing with *rēgem*. *rēgem spectandī*, 'of seeing the King'; cp. O.M. § 28, *Rōmānī cupidī crant insulam nostram vīsītandī et explōrandī*, 'of visiting and exploring our island': *spectandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum*, formed from the Verb *spectō*. These Nouns in *-ndum* are like the English Nouns in *-ing*, which are formed from Verbs ('seeing,' 'visiting').

7. *ipsō*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*.

8. *ēius*, 'of that man,' 'of him,' 'his,'; *ēius*, not *suīs*, is used here, though it refers to *Caractacō* in the same sentence, because *suīs* would naturally refer to *multitudō*, and this would make nonsense ('their own wife and brothers'). *in catēnīs*, 'in chains' = 'chained.' [So in Livy, xlv. 40. 6.]

9. *ipse*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacus*.

11. *ipsius* agrees with *principis*. *collocātus . . . inquit*, 'placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, he said' = 'he, placed before the eyes of the Emperor himself, said.' The Adjective *collocātus* agrees with 'he' in *inquit*, which might have been expressed by a separate word (*Is, ante oculōs . . . collocātus, inquit*). Compare in English "Driven out of its course by adverse winds, the ship was cast ashore" = "The ship, driven . . . winds, was cast ashore." The only difference is that the order of words in Latin would be "The ship, out of its course by adverse winds driven, was cast ashore."

14, 15. *tōtī orbī terrārum imperitandī*, 'of giving orders to (= of holding sway over) the whole world,'; *imperitandī* is the Genitive of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from the Verb *imperitō*: *tōtī orbī* is Dative, depending on *imperitandī*. The Adjective *tōtus*, *a*, *um* is declined like other Adjectives, in *-us*, *a*, *um*, except in the Gen. Sing. *tōt-ius* and the Dat. Sing. *tōt-i*. These forms are the same for all three Genders, like *ips-ius*, *ips-i*.

19. *ipsī*, 'himself,' agreeing with *Caractacō*.

It will be seen that the word *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* is used like the English word ‘-self’ in ‘my-self,’ ‘thy-self,’ ‘him-self,’ ‘her-self,’ ‘it-self’; and in the Plural like ‘-selves’ (our-selves, your-selves, them-selves). It is generally an Adjective, but may also be a Pronoun.

*ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, ‘-self.’

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Acc.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Gen.	<i>ipsius</i>			<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
Dat.		<i>ipsī</i>		<i>ipsis</i>		
Abl.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>			

7. [*ille*, *illa*, *illud* (declined at end of § 8).]

4. *ille*, ‘that-man,’ ‘he,’ referring to Suetonius (l. 2, ‘the former’), not to Nero (l. 3). The Nominative Case always has some emphasis; cp. l. 7.

10. *illam*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *colōniam*. *illi*, ‘those,’ agreeing with *veterānī*.

16. *illa*, ‘those,’ agreeing with *aedificia*. Here *illa* comes before its Noun, which is its usual position, except when an Adjective or another Noun is added to the phrase, as in *veterānī illi Rōmānī* and *colōniam illam Camulodūnum*; in such cases it comes between the Noun and the other word.

18. *illō*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *templō*.

8. 1. *illa*, ‘that’ or ‘the,’ agreeing with *rēgina*.

5. *illis*, ‘for those-men,’ ‘for them,’ referring to the Romans, who are in her mind; Dative Case.

11. *illōs*, ‘those-men,’ ‘them’; put at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis; so, too, *nōs* (l. 12), which is made still more emphatic by being repeated ‘us our country and homes, us freedom calls to arms.’

14. *illud*, ‘that,’ agreeing with *simulācrum*.

17, 18. In Cowper’s poem the Druid says—

‘Regions Caesar never knew  
Thy posterity shall sway.’

## PREPARATION

19. *illius*, 'of that,' agreeing with *dei*. Cp. *ipsius*, *eius*.

20. *illud*, 'that,' agreeing with *consilium* understood: 'that (counsel) is the counsel of a woman.' Cp. on § 5, l. 11.

21. *num . . . eritis*. 'will you men be less brave?' *Num* is a word that turns a statement into a question. The only English word by which it can be translated is 'whether.' But this use of 'whether' is old-fashioned, and no word is necessary in English for *num*

It will be seen that *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, like *is*, *ea*, *id*, may be used either as an Adjective (= 'that') or as a Pronoun (= 'that-one,' 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' etc.).

*ille*, *illa*, *illud*, 'that,' 'that-one.'

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
Acc.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Gen.	<i>illius</i>			<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
Dat.		<i>illi</i>		<i>illis</i>		
Abl.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>			

† 9. 4. *ex insulā Mōnā*; cp. on § 5, l. 9, *oppidum Camulodūnum*.

7. *iam tum*, 'already then' = 'even then.' *cōpiā mercātōrum celebre*, 'crowded with a multitude of merchants'; cp. O.M. § 15, *crēber pueris et puellis*.

11, 12. *Milia* (Plur.) takes the Gen. (*Rōmānōrum*); cp. l. 21.

13. *suōs*, 'his-men,' 'his own men,' = *suōs virōs*. *sē parābat*, 'was preparing himself.' *ad*, 'for.'

16. *paucī illi Rōmānī*, 'those few Romans'; cp. on § 7, l. 16.

22. *proeliū spectandī causā*, 'for the sake of seeing the battle,' lit. 'for the sake of the battle to-be-seen'; cp. on § 2, l. 22.

23. *ipsa sē*, 'herself' . . . herself'; *ipsa* agrees with *Boadicēa*.

10. [*hic*, *haec*, *hōc* (declined at end of § 12).]

1. *Hic*, 'this,' agreeing with *fīnis* understood; cp. on § 5, l. 11.

6. *nōnī principis*, in apposition to *Vespasiānī*; cp. on § 1, l. 7.

10. *Hūius*, 'of this,' agreeing with *virī clārī*.
11. *Hunc*, 'this,' agreeing with *virum*.
11. 1. *prīmō annō*, like *eō tempore*, § 3, l. 15.
3. *hanc*, 'this,' agreeing with *gentem*. *fere tōtam*, 'almost whole'; translate 'almost the whole of this tribe.'
7. *Hi*, 'these-men' or 'the latter': contrast *ille, illa, illud*, 'the former,' § 7, l. 4. *peritū natandī* The Adjective *perīlus*, 'skilled,' takes a Genitive (Engl. 'skilled in'); O.M. § 15, *lūdōrum perītus*.
10. *haec*, 'this' or 'the latter,' agreeing with *classis* understood.
- 11-14. *ipse penetrat*, 'he himself (=Agricola) penetrates.'
15. *velut in alteram insulam*, 'as (or as it were) into a second island'; cp. O.M. § 8, *noctū pharōs spectāmus, velut stellās clārās in oceanō*.
18. *Graupius*, the proper form of the word 'Grampian,' which latter has come from a misprint in the earliest printed edition of the *Agricola* of Tacitus, published in the 15th century. But for this we should have said 'My name is Norval; on the *Graupian Hills*,' etc.
21. *his*, 'with these' (=the following), agreeing with *verbis*.
12. 1. *haec*, 'this,' agreeing with *pugna*.
2. *tōtī Britanniae*, 'to the whole of Britain'; cp. § 11, l. 3.
- 3, 4. *Hi*, 'these,' agreeing with *montēs* (masc.); *hae*, 'these,' agreeing with *silvae* (fem.); *haec*, 'these,' agreeing with *maria* (neut.).
5. *hunc*, 'this,' agreeing with *angulum*.
7. *nē mare quidem*, 'not even the sea.' Note *nē* instead of *nōn*, and the position of *mare* between *nē* and *quidem*.
9. *hanc*, 'this,' agreeing with *insulam*.
12. *vestrōs* is masculine because it belongs to both the words *liberēs* and *uxōrēs*, which together = *hominēs*, 'human beings'; and *homō* is always masc. in Latin.
13. *vastāverint*, Fut. Perf.; 'when they shall have laid waste.'
15. *haec*, 'this,' agreeing with *Calēdonia*: 'this Caledonia of ours.'

*hic, haec, hoc*, 'this,' 'this one.'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>hī-c</i>	<i>hae-c</i>	<i>hō-c</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>hae-c</i>
Acc.	<i>hun-c</i>	<i>han-c</i>	<i>hō-c</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>hae-c</i>
Gen.	<i>hūius</i>			<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
Dat.		<i>hui-c</i>	}	<i>hīs</i>		
Abl.	<i>hō-c</i>	<i>hā-c</i>				

The *c* which is printed after the hyphen is an addition which is made to the word, but only in certain Cases. If you take off the *c*, the rest of these Cases look more like Cases of other Pronouns (*ille, illum, illius, illi, illō*). The *c* means 'here,' like the French *ci* in *celui-ci*; thus *hī-c* = 'this here.'

The Dative Singular is to be pronounced as one syllable.

† 13. 1. *in hunc modum*, 'in the following way'; for *hōc modō*.

5. *hī*, 'the latter,' the Caledonians, as also in l. 14.

6. *hominēs ignāvōs*, 'cowardly fellows,' in apposition to *hōs*. *Homō* is sometimes used in a contemptuous sense, but never *vir*.

18. *suōs ipsī*, 'themselves their-own'; cp. *ipsa sē*, § 9, l. 23.

#### 14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

4. *hūmān-ior*, 'kind-er,' 'more humane'; from *hūmān-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 14.

5. *clēmēt-ior*, 'more clement,' 'more merciful'; from *clēmēns*, § 10, l. 14.

6. *turbulēt-ior*, 'more turbulent'; from *turbulēt-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 3.

7. *fort-iōr-ēs*, 'brav-er,' agreeing with *hostēs*; from *fort-is*, *e*, § 2, l. 14. *audāc-iōr-ēs*, 'bold-er,' from *audax*, § 8, l. 1.

9. *iust-iōr-em*, 'just-er,' agreeing with *sē*; from *iust-us*, *a, um*, § 10, l. 14. Translate 'who showed himself juster?'

12. *in-hūmān-ius*, 'more in-human,' 'un-kinder,' agreeing with *quid*, Neuter. *saev-ius*, 'more savage'; from *saev-us*, *a, um*, § 12, l. 6.

13. *crūdēl-iōr-ēs*, 'more cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs*; from *crūdēl-is, e*, § 8, l. 19.

18. *cār-ior*, 'dear-er'; from *cār-us, -a, -um*, § 4, l. 11.

19. *ācr-iōr-ēs*, 'keen-er,' agreeing with *dēfensōrēs*; from *ācer, ācr-is, e*, § 4, l. 2.

20. *pulehr-ius*, 'more glorious,' agreeing with *nihil*, Neuter; from *pulcher, pulchr-a, um*, § 10, l. 13.

21. *miser-ius*, 'more miserable'; from *miser, miser-a, um*.

It will be seen that the Comparative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -er or by the use of 'more,' is formed in Latin by adding -ior (or, for the Neuter, -ius) to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

	WITHOUT THE ENDING.	COMPARATIVE.
<i>cār-us</i> (-a, -um)	<i>cār-</i>	<i>cār-ior, cār-ius</i>
<i>fort-is</i> (-e)	<i>fort-</i>	<i>fort-ior, fort-ius</i>
<i>clēmen-s</i> , for <i>clēment-s</i>	<i>clēment-</i>	<i>clēment-ior, clēment-ius</i>
<i>audax, -audāc-s</i>	<i>audāc-</i>	<i>audāc-ior, audāc-ius</i>

When the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, there is nothing to cut off from this Case.\* Thus :—

<i>miser</i> ( <i>miser-a, -um</i> )	<i>miser-</i>	<i>miser-ior, miser-ius</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------	-----------------------------

But the *e* that comes before the *r* is dropped whenever it is dropped in the Feminine and Neuter (and in the other Cases of the Masculine) of the Adjective itself. Thus :—

<i>pulcher</i> ( <i>pulchr-a, -um</i> )	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchr-iōr, pulchr-ius</i>
<i>ācer</i> ( <i>ācr-is, -e</i> )	<i>ācr-</i>	<i>ācr-ior, ācr-ius</i>

The Comparative, therefore, may be found most easily by cutting off the ending of the *Feminine*, and adding -ior or -ius.

It will be seen also that the Comparative of an Adjective is itself an Adjective; it can be declined (like a Noun of the 3rd Declension, such as Masc. *scriptor*, Neut. *corpus*), and must agree with the Noun to which it belongs. Its Feminine is the same as its Masculine; but its Neuter is different in the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

---

\* The Nominative Singular Masculine of these Adjectives in *er* has already dropped its ending.



## Declension of Comparatives.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	cāriōr	cārius	cāriōr-ēs	cāriōr-a
Acc.	cāriōr-em	cārius	cāriōr-ēs	cāriōr-a
Gen.	cāriōr-is		cāriōr-um	
Dat.	cāriōr-i		cāriōr-ibus	
Abl.	cāriōr-e		cāriōr-ibus	

Note that if we want to say 'less dear,' 'less brave,' etc. (which is also a kind of Comparative of 'dear,' 'brave,' etc.) we must use the Adverb *minus*, which means 'less': for instance, *minus cārus*, *minus cāra*, *minus cārum*, 'less dear.'

## 15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

2. *saev-issima*, 'the most savage,' agreeing with *bella*; from the Adjective *saev-us*, *a*, *um*. *inhūmān-issima*, 'the most inhuman'; from *inhūmān-us*, *a*, *um*.

4. *pugnāta*, 'fought,' is an Adjective formed from the Verb *pugnō*, 'I fight,' and agreeing with *bella illa*; the whole phrase *temporibus antiquis contrā gentēs barbarās pugnāta* is like the phrase *ā Britannīs reportātam* in § 5, ll. 12, 13; see note there.

5. *crūdēl-issimī*, 'most cruel' = 'very cruel,' agreeing with *hostēs*; from *crūdēl-is*, *e*.

9. *ūtil-issima*, 'most useful' = 'very useful,' agreeing with *pax*; from *ūtil-is*, *e*.

12. *revocāvit* means here not 'called back,' but 'called off,' 'withdrew.' *optimīs*, 'very good,' agreeing with *vīis*; irregular Superlative of *bonus*, *a*, *um*, § 4, l. 1.

13. *pulcher-rimīs*, 'very fine,' agreeing with *aedificiīs*; from *pulcher*, *pulchr-a*, *um*. *celeber-rimīs*, 'very famous,' from *celeber*, *celebr-is*, *e*, § 1, l. 8. *templīs*, etc., in apposition to *aedificiīs*.

18. *fort-issimī*, 'very brave,' agreeing with *dēfensōrēs*; from *fort-is*, *e*. *ācer-rimī*, 'very keen'; from *ācer*, *ācr-is*, *e*.

22. *Callēvae Atrebatum*, 'at Calleva of the Atrebatēs' = 'at Silchester'; *Callēvae* is the Locative; cp. *Dēvae* and *Iscae*, § 5.

24. *in insulā Vectī*, at Brading, near Sandown. In several of the rooms the floor is covered with mosaics.

27. *mediocriter hūmānae*, 'moderately civilized,' 'pretty civilized.' Contrast with this *hūmanissimus* = 'very civilized.'

It will be seen that the Superlative of an Adjective, which is formed in English by adding -est, or by the use of 'most,' is formed in Latin by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum to the part of the Adjective that remains when the ending -us or -is or -s alone of the Nominative Singular Masculine is cut off. Thus :—

	WITHOUT THE ENDING.	SUPERLATIVE.
cār-us (-a, -um)	cār-	cār-issimus, cār-issima, cār-issimum
fort-is (-e)	fort-	fort-issimus, fort-issima, fort-issimum
clēmen-s, for clēment-s	clēment-	clēment-issimus, clēment-issima, clēment-issimum

But when the Nom. Sing. Masc. is formed without any -us or -is, the Superlative is formed by doubling the last letter of the Nom. Sing. Masc. and adding -imus, -ima, -imum. Thus we get (with rr)—

	SUPERLATIVE.
miser (miser-a, -um)	miser-r-imus, miser-r-ima, miser-r-imum
pulcher (pulchr-a, -um)	pulcher-r-imus, pulcher-r-ima, pulcher-r-imum
ācer (ācr-is, -e)	ācer-r-imus, ācer-r-ima, ācer-r-imum

Note that the *e* before the *r* of the Nom. Sing. Masc. is *never dropped* to form the Superlative.

Superlatives are declined in the same way as other Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

#### 16. [Passive Voice of 1st Conj. ; Pres., Past Imperfect, Fut. Conjugated at end of § 17].

7. *delectant-ur*, 'they are delighted,' 'they are interested' ; Passive of *dēlectant*, 'they delight,' 'they please.' The word *suae* in l. 6 is emphatic, 'their own' ; these two boys are Scots.

8. *laudāt-ur*, 'is praised' ; Passive of *laudat*, 'praises.'  
*Nōn-ne* in l. 7 is simply the word *nōn* with -ne tacked on to it to turn the statement into a question ; compare O.M. § 19, *nōn-ne in oppidīs habitābant* ? 'did not they live in towns ?' The word -ne, like *num* (§ 8), need not be translated by any separate word in English.

9. *expugnābant-ur*, 'used to be taken by storm'; Passive of *expugnābant*. Similarly *vastābant-ur* and *dēbellābant-ur* in l. 10.

Note that the Person by whom the action is done is expressed by the Preposition *ā* or *ab* with the Ablative Case; thus *ā Tacitō* and *ab aliis imperatōribus*.

13. *delecto-r*, 'I am delighted (or pleased)'; Passive of *dēlectō*.

17. *ornābāt-ur*, 'was being adorned'; Passive of *ornābat*. *aedificiis Rōmānis*, 'with Roman buildings' (l. 16).

17. 2. *dēlectābant-ur*, 'used to be delighted (or pleased).'

4. *animō acrī et impigrō*, 'with (= of) keen and active mind'; Ablative of Quality, used like an Adjective (*keen-minded*) after the verb 'to be'. Cp. § 2, l. 14.

8. *Britannōs cantāvisse*, Accusative with Infinitive; § 2, l. 10.

9. *dēlectā-mini*, 'are delighted,' with *vōs*, 'you'; Passive of *dēlectā-tis*. Translate 'you boys of the present day take pleasure in . . .'

10. *patru-issime*, 'kindest,' 'most like a kind uncle,' is the Vocative of *patruissimus*, a Superlative invented by the poet Plautus as a joke. It is tormented not from any Adjective, but from the Noun *patru-us*; as though we were to say in English 'uncle, uncl-er, uncl-est.'

11. *dēlectā-ris*, 'you are delighted,' 'you take pleasure'; Passive of *dēlectā-s*. Here it stands in a question: *nōn-ne dēlectāris?* 'are you not delighted?' *corporis certāminibus*, 'by contests of the body' = 'by athletic sports.'

13. *dēlectāba-r*, 'I used to be delighted'; Passive of *dēlectāba-m*. *adulescēns* here stands in apposition to 'I'; 'I, a young man,' or 'I, as a young man.'

14. *dēlectābo-r*, 'I shall be delighted'; Passive of *dēlectābo*.

18, 19. There are two lines of verse by a poet of the first century A.D. 'Nor hast thou less mobility =(quickness of movement), if perchance it pleases thee either to double (=to return) the flying ball or to pick it up (=to catch it) falling.' *volant-em* and *cadent-em* are Acc. Sing. of Adjectives formed from the Verbs *volō* (1st Conj.) and *cadō* (3rd Conj.): Nom. *volan-s*, *caden-s*, like *monstran-s* in O.M. § 41, *digitō ad orientem monstrans*.

20. *mūtātō nōmine*, etc., 'the story is told about you with changed name (=under a different name).' This is a quotation from Horace; it means 'the cap fits you.'

## Formation of the Passive Voice.

THIS RULE IS TRUE OF ALL THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

It will be seen that the Passive of the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses is formed from the Active

- (i.) by adding *-ur* in the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. ;
- (ii.) by adding *-r* in the 1st Persons Sing. and Plur. ; which *r* displaces the last letter of the Active if it is a consonant.
- (iii.) by changing the *-s* of the 2nd Person Sing. into *-ris*, and the *-tis* of the 2nd Person Plur. into *-mini*.

Thus we get (with some changes in the quantities of the vowels) :—

		PRESENT PASS.	PAST IMPERF. PASS.†	FUTURE PASS.
S.	1	dēlecto-r	dēlectāba-r	dēlectābo-r
	2	dēlectā-ris	dēlectābā-ris	dēlectābe-ris *
	3	dēlectāt-ur	dēlectābāt-ur	dēlectābit-ur
P.	1	dēlectāmu-r	dēlectābāmu-r	dēlectābimu-r
	2	dēlectā-mini	dēlectābā-mini	dēlectābi-mini
	3	dēlectant-ur	dēlectābant-ur	dēlectābunt-ur

\* Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e* ; *dēlectabi-s* becomes *dēlectābe-ris*.

† 18. In this section it will be seen that Questions may be introduced either (1) by words like *cūr*, 'why' ; *quāta hōra*, 'what o'clock' ; *quandō*, 'when' ; or (2) by a word like *num* or *-ne*, which need not be translated by any separate word in English. There is a great difference between these two kinds of question. Try answering them. The second kind may be answered by a simple 'yes' or 'no' ; thus *nōn-ne melius erit* ? 'will it not be better ?' expects the answer 'yes' ; and *num vōs viri minus fortēs eritis* ? 'will you men be less brave ?' (§ 8) expects the answer 'no.' But the first kind cannot be answered by either 'yes' or 'no,' and takes *no num* or *-ne*.

3. *Rutupiās*, 'to Richborough' ; Accusative of the Plural Name *Rutupiae* ; cp. *Rōmam dēportāvērunt*, § 5, l. 26.—So in l. 9 (lit. 'you will come to R.' = 'you will arrive at R.')

14. *melius*, 'better,' Neuter Comparative of *bonus* ; *a, um* ; cp. *optimus*, § 15, l. 12.

16. *festināre*, 'to hurry,' different from *properāre*, 'to hasten.'

20. *quandō*, 'when ?' ( = 'at what time ?' ), differs from *cum*, 'when' (l. 9).

19. [quī, quae, quod and quis, quid, in question.]

2. ā *Calēdonibus reportātā* ; cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13, ā *Britannīs reportātam*.

3. quis, 'who,' agreeing with *Galgacus* ('Galgacus was who?').

8. quid, 'what,' agreeing with *nōmen*.

12. quī, 'who,' agreeing with *Pictī*.

15. quō, 'at what,' agreeing with *tempore* ; cp. *cō tempore*, § 3, l. 15.

18. quā *ex* = *ex quā*, 'from what,' with *terrā*.

21. quem, 'whom' ; *fuisse*, 'to have been,' from *fu*. Cp. § 2, l. 10.

24. cuius, 'of which,' agreeing with *partis*.

It will be seen that *quī, quae, quod* is used as an Adjective, = English 'what?' or 'which?'. In the Nominative Case Singular there is also a Pronoun, *quis* (Masc. and Fem.) = 'who?' *quid* (Neut.) = 'what?'

SINGULAR.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī (quis)	quae (quis)	quod (quid)
Acc.	quem	quam	quod (quid)
Gen.		cuius	
Dat.		cui	
Abl.	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus		
Abl.			

The Dative Singular is one syllable (compare *huic*, § 12, end); but it is sometimes pronounced as two syllables in order to distinguish it from the Nom. Masc.

20. [quī, quae, quod, without any questioning sense.]
7. quī, 'who,' referring to *Hadriānō*.
10. cuius, 'of which' or 'whose,' referring to *vallum*.
11. quī, 'who,' referring to *Antōninus Pius*.
13. cui, 'to which,' referring to *vallum*.
14. quem, 'whom,' referring to *Septimius Sevērus*.
15. paucis annis ante, 'a few years before,' lit. 'by a few years before (or previously)'; ante is here an Adverb, not a Preposition.
17. Eburāci, 'at York'; Locative Case of *Eburācum*; cp. on § 5, l. 22.
18. quō, 'in which,' agreeing with *annō*. *trucidāta fuisse narrantur*, 'are said to have been slaughtered.'
20. o si sic omnes, lit. 'oh, if thus all!' = 'oh, if they had killed them all thus!'

It will be seen that *quī, quae, quod* (but not *quis* or *quid*) may be used without any questioning sense, just like the English 'who' or 'which.' Sometimes it begins a separate sentence, as in the last instance above (*Quō annō quinquāgintā milia Rōmānōrum trucidāta fuisse narrantur*), which is just as much a separate sentence as if it were a question (*Quō annō . . . narrantur?* 'in which year are fifty thousand Romans said to have been slaughtered?'). But generally *quī, quae, quod* begins a little sentence which is only a part of a bigger sentence, as in *Septimius Sevērus [quem Rōmānī paucis annis ante principem creāverant] maximam expeditiōnem comparāvit*. In such cases the little sentence, here printed in square brackets, is called a Subordinate Clause. But if you examine it, you will find that it is complete in itself: 'whom the Romans had created emperor' is like 'whom had the Romans created emperor?' (*Quem Rōmānī principem creāverant?*), except that it is not a question. This helps us to see the reason for the **Case** and the **Gender** and **Number** of *quem*. It is in the Accusative Case because, if the clause were turned into a separate sentence, the word for 'whom' would have to be in the Accusative Case: it is in the Masculine Gender and the Singular Number because it refers to *Septimius Sevērus*, which stands in the other clause of the sentence. Thus in order to find the Case of 'which' turn the clause into a separate sentence: in order to find its Gender and Number think of what is meant by the word.

**RULE.**—*Quī, quae, quod*, when it introduces a Subordinate Clause, stands in the Case in which it would stand if the Clause were a separate sentence; and it agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun to which it refers.

Note that the Case of the Noun to which it refers may *happen* to be the same as the Case of *quī, quae, quod* itself, as in *Antōninus Pius, quī . . .*; see l. 11.

† 21. 1. *tū-ne Pictus es?* 'are you a Pict?' The *-ne* turns the statement into a question, as in § 18, l. 14, *nōn-ne melius erit?*; and the word *tū* is put in because it is emphatic. 'Are you a Pict?' (without emphasis) would be *Pictus-ne es?* 'Are you not a Pict?' would be *Nōn-ne Pictus es?*

3. *Cellicā origine*, 'of Celtic origin'; cp. *animō fortī*, § 2, l. 14

4. *et frātris tuī*, 'and your brother's (name).'

6, 7. *tōtī insulae nōmen est Britanniae*, 'to the whole island there is the name Britain,' 'the whole island has the name Britain'; cp. on § 5, l. 13 (*nōmen Britannicō*).

14. *Antōnī*, Vocative of *Antōnius* (the writer of these Commentaries); cp. *fīlī*, Vocative of *fīlius*.

18. *ubi libertās, ibi patria est*, 'where (or wherever) there is freedom, there is the fatherland.'

22. [2nd Conjugation; Pres., Past Imperf., and Future, Active.]

2. *videō*, 'I see.' Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st Conj. All Verbs of the 2nd Conj. will be found in the Vocabulary with the ending *eō*.

5. *vident*, 'they see.' *salvēte!* 'hail!' lit. 'be safe and sound.' *gaudēmus*, 'we are glad.'

7. *respondet*, 'replies,' 'responds.' *bene nōs habēmus*, lit. 'we have ourselves well' = 'we are all right'; *nous nous portons bien*.

8. *nōs nōn pigēbit*, 'it will not vex us' = 'we shall not mind.' *Piget*, 'it vexes,' is a Verb which can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. 'it rains,' etc. *sedēre*, 'to sit down.'

9. *habēbimus*, 'we shall have.' *in oculīs* = 'in sight.'

10. *vidētis-ne*, 'do you see?' *ut . . . dēlet*, 'how time destroys everything.'

11. *rident*, 'laugh,' or 'smile'; cp. *cachinnāre*, § 17, l. 15.

14. *iacet*, 'it lies' = 'it is situated' (*situm est*).

19. *dēlētus*, *a*, *um*, 'destroyed,' an Adjective formed from *dēlēō*. *spectat ad*, 'looks towards' = 'faces.'

22. *habēbat*, 'it used to have,' 'it had.'

24. *vidēs*, 'you see' = 'one sees'; cp. O.M. § 11, *ex castellō fretum Gallicum spectās*, 'one looks at the English Channel.'

It will be seen that the Present, the Past Imperfect and the Future Tenses of the 2nd Conjugation differ from those of the 1st Conjugation only in having an *e* instead of an *a* in the endings. (In the 1st Conjugation the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present has lost its *a*: *spectō* is for *spectaō*).

### Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	<i>habēō</i>	<i>habēbam</i>	<i>habēbō</i>
	2	<i>habēs</i>	<i>habēbās</i>	<i>habēbīs</i>
	3	<i>habet</i>	<i>habēbat</i>	<i>habēbit</i>
P.	1	<i>habēmus</i>	<i>habēbāmus</i>	<i>habēbimus</i>
	2	<i>habētis</i>	<i>habēbātis</i>	<i>habēbitis</i>
	3	<i>habent</i>	<i>habēbant</i>	<i>habēbunt</i>

INFINITIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
<i>habēre</i>	S. 2	<i>habē</i>
	P. 2	<i>habēte</i>

### 23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation, Passive (same tenses).]

1. *portus*, 'a port,' 'a harbour.' The case-endings of the nouns printed black in this section should be compared with those of the 2nd Decl.; for instance, *portus* with *hortus*.

2. *Portuī Rutupinō*, 'Richborough Harbour,' agreeing in Case with *cui*. Cp. on § 21, ll. 6, 7.

3. *ad hunc portum*, 'to this harbour.'

4. *omnium portuum*, 'of all harbours.'

6. *in litore portūs*, 'on the shore of the harbour.'

2. *quattuor et quadrāgintā passūs longum*, 'forty-four paces (or yards) long.'



13. *in manū*, 'in the hand' = 'in our hands.'  
*tenēbamus*, 'we held,' or 'we were holding,' from *teneō*.

16. *pertinet*, 'extends,' 'stretches'; from *per-tineō* (which is a compound of *per* and *teneō*, lit. 'I hold through').

17. *ūsui*, 'for use' (Dat.). *Cui* is also a Dative, so that the literal translation of the sentence is 'To whom was this tunnel for a use?' or 'To whom did this tunnel exist for a purpose?' In English we should say, 'To whom was it *of use*, or *useful*?' This example throws light upon the meaning of the Dative in such sentences as *ei Britannia nōn cūrae erat* (§ 2, l. 20), where we should naturally say in English, 'to him Britain was not an *anxiety*'; but the Latin means properly 'to him Britain did not serve as an anxiety—was not a cause of anxiety.'

19. *dē ūsū*, 'about (or concerning) the use.'

20. *sī castellum obsidēbātur*, 'if (-if at any time) the castle was besieged'; Passive of *obsidēbat* from *ob-sideō* (which is a Compound of *ob* and *sedeō*, lit. 'I sit down against').

21. *praebēri*, 'to be provided'; Passive of *praebēre*, 'to provide.' *Praebēō* is contracted from *prae-hibeō*, lit. 'I hold forth' (*-hibeō* = *habeō*).

23. *ad dextrum cornū*, 'at the right wing'; *cornū* is (not Abl. but) Accusative Singular of a Neuter Noun of the 4th Decl.

28. *custōdem valēre iubēmus*, 'we bid the keeper good-day (lit. to-be-in-good-health).'

#### Fourth Declension.

	MASCULINES & FEMININES.		NEUTERS.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. V.	portus	portūs	cornū	cornua
Acc.	portum	portūs	cornūs	cornuum
Gen.	portūs	portuum	cornūi	cornibus
Dat.	portui	portibus	cornū	
Abl.	portū			

**RULE OF GENDER.**—Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are Masculine, except a few which are Feminine (*manus*, 'hand'; *Idūs*, plur., 'Ides'; and a few others). Note that none of these Feminines end in *-tus*; all those that end in *-tus* are Masculine.

Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-ū* are Neuter.

## Second Conjugation—Pres., Past Imperf., Fut.

PASSIVE VOICE (see Rule, § 17).

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	habeo-r	habēba-r	habēbo-r
	2	habē-ris	habēbā-ris	habēbe-ris *
	3	habēt-ur	habēbāt-ur	habēbīt-ur
P.	1	habēmu-r	habēbāmu-r	habēbimu-r
	2	habē-mini	habēbā-mini	habēbi-mini
	3	habent-ur	habēbant-ur	habēbunt-ur

Note that in this form (2nd Pers. Sing. Fut.) there is a further change of *i* into *e*, as in the 1st Conj.: habēbi-s becomes habēbe-ris.

INFINITIVE	IMPERATIVE.
habēri	Not yet learned

## 24. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 2nd Conj.]

2. *dēlēv-īt*, 'destroyed,' from *deleō*. Contrast *spectāv-ī*, *-istī*, *-it*, etc.

3. *con-stat*, lit. 'stands' or 'is fixed'; hence 'is known.'

5. *habēt-ur*, 'is held.' *Habeō* may mean 'I hold' as well as 'I have.'

6. *Aqua haerēbat*, 'the water was sticking,' means 'the clock stopped' or 'there was a hitch.' The Romans used water clocks, time being measured by the water running out. *habu-imus*, 'we had.'

9. *in manibus habu-erat*, 'had had in her hands' = 'had been reading.'

10. *tenu-erunt*, 'held,' from *teneō*, § 23, l. 13.

13. *rēvērā insula*, 'really an island.' The so-called 'Isle of Thanet' is now part of the mainland.

15. *duo tantum vel tria milia passuum*, 'only two or three miles (lit. thousands of paces).' The Latin for 'a mile' is *mille passūs* (lit. a thousand paces), and for 'miles' is *milia passuum*, which was sometimes shortened to *milia* alone, whence comes our word 'mile' and the French *mille*.

17. *habu-erunt*, 'had' or 'got.' *ris-imus*, 'laughed,' from *rideō*, § 22, l. 11.

26. *Germanica*. The German words are *Angel* 'angle,' and *Kante* 'corner,' 'edge.' The *vir doctus* of l. 18 is Dr. John Evans.

It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of the 2nd Conjugation may be formed in several different ways :

- (1) It may end in *ēv-* ; thus *dēlēv-* from *deleō*, which is like *spectāv-* from *spectō*. But this way is not common in the 2nd Conj.
- (2) It may end in *u-* ; thus *habu-* from *habeō*. This is the commonest way.
- (3) It may end in *s-* ; thus *rīs-* from *rīdeō* (the *d* being dropped).
- (4) It may be formed without any suffix ; thus *respond-* from *respondeō* (§ 25, l. 4).

**Second Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.**

		PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
S.	1	habu-ī	habu-eram	habu-erō
	2	habu-istī	habu-erās	habu-eris
	3	habu-it	habu-erat	habu-erit
P.	1	habu-imus	habu-erāmus	habu-erimus
	2	habu-istis	habu-erātis	habu-eritis
	3	habu-ērunt	habu-erant	habu-erint

INFINITIVE.  
habu-isse

Similarly conjugate *dēlēv-ī, -istī, -it, etc.* ; *rīs-ī, -istī, -it, etc.* ; *respond-ī, -istī, -it, etc.*

† 25. 4. *aqua haes-it* (from *haereō*, § 24, l. 6), 'the clock stopped.' *respond-imus*, 'answered,' 'replied,' from *respondeō*, § 22, l. 7.

5. *hinc annōs duōs*, lit. 'from-hence two years' = 'two years ago.' *saecula tredecim fuerant*, 'there had been thirteen centuries' = 'thirteen centuries had elapsed.'

6. *ex quō = ex quō tempore*, 'from what time,' 'since.'

11. *Augustinum . . . docēre iuss-erat* (from *iubeō*, § 23, l. 28), 'had bidden Augustine to teach.' *nōlitiā* depends on *docēre*.

16. *Durovernī* (Locative), *in capite*, 'at Canterbury, in the capital' = 'at Canterbury, the capital,' without 'in.'

17. *praebu-it* (= *prae-hibu-it*), 'provided,' from *praebeō* (= *prae-hibeō*), § 23, l. 21.

† 26. 1. *ante-quam*, lit. 'before than' or 'earlier than,' = 'before the time when' or simply 'before.' But this 'before,' which is followed by a Verb in a Subordinate Clause (*praebuilt*) must be distinguished from the Preposition 'before,' which in Latin is *ante*: cp. *ante finem*, § 1, l. 3. See note on *post-quam* and *post*, § 2, l. 1. *Ante-quam* and *post-quam* join on a little sentence which forms part of a larger sentence, and are therefore called Subordinating 'Conjunctions': cp. note at end of § 20.

10. *in hunc modum*; cp. § 13, l. 1.

16. *pro-hibēō vōs manēre*, 'I shall forbid you to remain,' like *Augustinum docēre iusserat*, § 25, ll. 10, 11. *Pro-hibēō* is a compound of *habēō*, lit. 'I for-hold' ('I hold away,' cp. 'for-bid'); quite different from *praebeō*. *Prohibeō* often takes the Infin.

27. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 1st or 2nd Conj.]

5. *aedificātae erant*, 'had been built.' The literal translation is 'were (*erant*) built (*aedificātae*),' but this would not give the meaning in English; for it would naturally mean 'used to be built,' which would be *aedificābantur* in Latin. *Aedificātae erant* means 'were already built,' just as we might say 'My letter was written before yours arrived'; here 'was written' = 'had been written.' Notice, then, that English phrases like 'was written,' 'were built,' etc., may be used in two different senses, which in Latin are expressed by two different tenses (the Pluperfect and the Past Imperfect). *Dubris*, 'at Dover'; Locative Case of *Dubrae*. The Locative of a Plural Name like *Dubrae* or *Rutupiae* is the same in form as the Ablative. Contrast *Virōcōniā*, *Dēvae*, etc. (§ 5, l. 22) and *Callēvae* below (l. 6).

6. *vid-istis* and *vid-i* are Perf. Act. of *videō*. The Pronouns *vōs* and *ego* are put in because they are emphatic: 'you have seen at Dover and I at Silchester.'

9. *dēportātus est*, 'was carried-off.' Note the translation 'was carried-off,' where the Latin is literally 'is carried-off.' But the English 'is carried-off' would naturally mean 'is generally carried-off,' which would be in Latin *dēportātur* (Present Tense); so we use 'was' in such cases. With the whole sentence compare the Active construction in § 5, ll. 25 and 26.

12. *accūsāta est*, 'she was accused,' lit. 'she is accused.'

13. *Pompōniae Graecinae*; compare § 21, l. 7, and § 23, l. 2.

15. *dēlēv-erant*, 'they had destroyed'; cp. *dēlēv-ūt*, § 24, l. 2.

17. *dēlēta erat*, 'had been destroyed'; here we might say 'was destroyed.' For the Adj. *dēlētus*, *a*, *um*, see § 22, l. 19.

19. *tenuiēs*, 'holding,' and *cantantēs*, 'singing,' are Active Adjectives formed from the Verbs *teneō* and *cantō*. The vowel before the *-nt* is *e* when the Adjective comes from a Verb of the 2nd Conjugation, *a* when it comes from a Verb of the 1st Conj.

20. *ā domō tuā sanctā*, 'from Thy holy house'; *domō* is the Ablative of the Feminine Noun *domus*, which belongs partly to the 2nd, but mainly to the 4th Decl., and which has a Locative Case (= 'at home').

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N., V.	domus	domūs
Acc.	domum	domōs (2nd decl.)
Gen.	domūs	domuum (4th) or domōrum (2nd)
Dat.	domui	domibus
Abl.	domō (2nd decl.)	
Loc.	domī (2nd decl.)	

#### Formation of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice.

These Tenses are formed by means of the Passive Adjective and the Verb 'to be,' as in English; but the tense of the Verb 'to be' is generally different in the two languages.

**Perfect:** Passive Adj. + *sum*; English, 'I have-been —,' or 'I was —'. thus *aedificātae sunt*, 'they have-been built,' or 'they were built' (lit. 'they are built'); *dēlēta est*, 'it has-been destroyed,' or 'it was destroyed' (lit. 'it is destroyed').

**Pluperfect:** Passive Adj. + *eram*; English, 'I had-been —': thus *aedificātae erant*, 'they had-been built' (lit. 'they were built'); *dēlēta erat*, 'it had-been destroyed' (lit. 'it was destroyed').

**Future Perf.:** Passive Adj. + *erō*; English, 'I shall have been —': thus *aedificātae erunt*, 'they will-have-been built' (lit. 'they will-be built'); *dēlēta erit*, 'it will have been destroyed' (lit. 'it will-be destroyed').

Notice that the Passive Adjective must agree in Gender and Number, and the Verb 'to be' in Number and Person, with the Noun of which it is said; thus, *Pompōnia Graecina accusāta est*; *basilicae aedificātae sunt*.

[The above rules apply to all four Conjugations.]

## 28. [Nouns of the 5th Declension.]

3. *misericiordiā com-mōv-erat*, 'had moved with pity.'
4. *multis annis ante*; cp. *paucis annis ante*, § 20, l. 15.
5. *faciē pulchrā*, 'with (or of) handsome face (or appearance)' cp. § 2, l. 14.
6. *com-mōtus est*, 'he was moved,' Perf. Pass.
8. *quōrum in manū*, 'in whose possession (*lit.* hand).'
11. *hūius faciēi*, 'of this appearance.' The Gen. has here the same meaning as the Abl. in l. 5.
13. *faciēs*, 'face,' 'appearance'; Nom. Sing.
14. *quōs . . . habet*, 'whom the King of Darkness (=the Devil) has as ministers (or servants).' These are the words of Gregory, as reported by the Venerable Bede. The phrase *Rex Tenebrarum* could not have been used by a classical Latin writer in this sense.
16. *eōs esse*, 'them to be' = 'that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10.
17. *angelicam faciem*, 'an angelic face (or appearance).'
18. *eōs vocārī oportet*, 'they ought to be called,' *lit.* 'it behoves them to be called.' *Oportet* can only be used in the 3rd Pers. Sing.; cp. *piget*, § 22, l. 8.
22. *ad fidem*, 'to the faith'; from *fidēs*. The word is here used in a specially Christian sense; in classical Latin it means 'loyalty' or 'allegiance.'
25. *diēs*, 'the day'; Nom. Sing.

## Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PIURAL
<i>Nom., Voc.</i>	<i>faciēs</i>	} <i>faciēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>faciem</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>faciēi</i>	} <i>faciērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>faciēi</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>faciē</i>	

RULE OF GENDER.—All Nouns of the 5th Declension are Feminine, except *diēs*, which is generally Masculine (though sometimes Feminine in the Singular Number).

† 29. 1. *diēi* (5th Decl.) *illius bellī*, 'of that jolly day.'

3. *vehiculum parātum erat*, 'the carriage was prepared or was ready.' Here we have an excellent example to show how the Pluperf. Pass. may sometimes be translated literally by 'was —': but here too it may be translated 'had-been prepared.'

6. *domī*, Locative; see on § 27, l. 20. *longō diē*; Abl. = 'by.'

9. *mans-*, from *maneo* (§ 26, l. 16), as *rīs-*, from *rīdeo*.

30. 1. *post Idūs*, 'after the Ides.' The Ides of September, as of most months of the Roman year, fell on the 13th. But—

In March, July, October, May  
The Ides were on the fifteenth day.

2. *elapsi sunt*, 'are elapsed,' = 'have slipped away'; cp. § 1, l. 2. *āter*, 'black.' The Romans called unlucky days 'black days.'

5. *verbum 'valē'* = the word 'goodbye'; *valē*, lit. 'be well,' or 'fare-well,' from *valeō*; like *salvē*, 'be safe and sound,' from *salveō* (§ 22, l. 5). But *salvē* came to be used for 'how do you do?' and *valē* for 'good-bye' (which = *God be with you*).

7. *valēre iubēbō*; cp. § 23, ll. 27, 28, *custōdem valēre iubēmus*.

8. *māne* is properly an Abl. Case = 'in the morning'; thus *ā māne* is lit. 'from in-the-morning,' but may be translated simply 'from the morning'; cp. the phrase *māne erat*, lit. 'it was in-the-morning' = 'it was morning.'

9. *diēs fēriātī*, 'holi-days,' i.e. holy days; days of festivals (*fēriæ*). *diēs profestī*, 'working-days'; *pro-festus* is the opposite of *festus* or *fēriātus*, 'festal.'

10, 11. An imitation of two well-known lines of Ovid [*Fasts*, i. 47 and 50]. Line 11 means 'And the day, which will be a holiday, was in the morning a working-day'—a description of a half-holiday. In l. 10, *silent-ur* (Passive of *silenti*, from *sileō*) almost = 'are silenced.'

The metre is 'dactylic,' as in Coleridge's lines:

'In the hexámeter rises the fountáin's silvery cólumn;  
'In the pentámeter áye fálling in mélody báck.

12. *trēs rēs*, 'three things,' 'three realities'; Nom. Plur. of the important Noun *rēs*, 5th Decl. (whence Engl. 're-al').

† 31. 2. *septem diēs*, 'for seven days.' Time *how* long is generally expressed in Latin by the Accusative without a Preposition, and often in English without 'for.' *iam sum*, lit. 'I am now' = 'I have now been and still am'; cp. in English—

'Over the great restless ocean  
Six and twenty years *I roam*.'

where the Present Tense = 'I have been and still am roaming.'

3. *ut valēs* ? 'how do you do ?; lit. 'how well are you ?'

7. *tē salvēre iubet*, 'sends you his kind regards'; cp. § 23, l. 28 § 30, l. 7. *quid novī*, lit. 'anything of new' = 'anything new', 'any news': *novī* is Gen. Sing. of the Neuter Adj. *novum*, 'a new thing.' Latin is very fond of such Genitives where we in English do not generally say 'of': thus in O.M., § 30, *aliquantum temporis*, 'some time,' lit. 'a lot of time.'

10. *illic nātās*, 'produced (lit. born) there'; cp. 'native oysters.'

14. *rīdens* (*rīdent*-), 'laughing'; from *rīdeō*; cp. *tenent-ēs*, § 27, l. 19.

15. *dē rē*, 'about the fact'; Abl. Sing. of *rēs*, § 30, l. 12.

17. *litterās dedit*, 'has sent letters,' lit. 'has given letters.'

18, 19. *Ministrum nostrum quī Coloniīs praeest* = 'our Secretary of State for the Colonies.'

21. *Rēipublicae*, 'of the Republic,' from *rēspública*. This is really two words, (1) *rēs*, the Noun of the 5th Decl., (2) *publica*, an Adjective agreeing with it. Both together = 'commonwealth,' or 're-public.' In declining the word, Both parts must be changed: thus—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.*
Nom.	<i>rēspública</i>	<i>rēspublicae</i>
Acc. }	<i>rempublicam</i>	<i>rēspublicās</i>
Gen.	} <i>rēipublicae</i>	} <i>rērumpublicārum</i>
Dat.		
Abl.		
	<i>rēpublicā</i>	<i>rēbuspublicis</i>

\* The Plural means 'republics'—never 'public affairs' in the ordinary meaning of that phrase.



## 32 [3rd Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.]

1. *quaesō*, 'I ask'; often used like 'please' (= please tell me). Carefully note the endings of the Verbs in black print below, and compare them with the endings of the 1st and 2nd Conj. The 3rd is the most difficult of the Conjugations, and will require special attention.

2. *longum est dicere*, 'it is a long story (lit. a long-thing) to tell': *dicere* is the Present Infinitive of *dicō*; note that the *e* before the *r* is short, whereas in the 2nd Conj. it is long.

4. *colunt*, 'cultivate,' 'till'; *in-colunt* (l. 6), 'inhabit.'

6. *disputatur*, 'it is being disputed' = 'the dispute is.'

7. *ab hōc ad illum*, 'from the latter to the former.'

8. *per*, 'for,' lit. 'through'—another way of expressing time how long; cp. on § 31, l. 2. *mittunt-ur*, 'are being sent,' Passive of *mittunt*, 'they are sending,' from *mittō*, 'I send' (or 'I let-go'). For the Present Tense with *iam* see on § 31, l. 2.

9. *aquam perdimus*, 'we waste the water' = 'we are losing time'; see note on the water-clock, § 24, l. 6. *Per-dō* is a Compound of *per* and *dō*: note that nearly all the Compounds of *dō* (and they are many) belong to the 3rd Conj. *Dō* itself belongs to the 1st Conj., and has the Infin. *dāre*; but observe that the *a* is short (unlike any other Verb of the 1st Conj.). Two Compounds of *dō* which have the Infinitive *-dāre* (not *-dēre*) are *circum-dō* and *vēnum-dō*. *currit hōra*, 'time flies,' lit. 'the hour is running.'

11. *ad-mittō*, 'I admit'; lit. 'I let-go to,' 'I let in.'

12. *rē vērā*, Abl. of *rēs vēra*, 'a true thing'; hence 'in truth,' 'in reality,' 'really.' Sometimes written as one word (§ 24, l. 13).

17. *ad-mittī*, 'to be admitted,' 'to be let in'; Pres. Infin. Pass. of *admittō*. Note the peculiar way in which the Passive Infinitive is formed in this Conjugation:—

1st Conj.	..	Active	-āre,	Passive	-ārī
2nd Conj.	..	Active	-ēre,	Passive	-ērī
3rd Conj.	..	Active	-ere,	Passive	-ī (not -ērī).

*oportet eōs admittī*; cp. § 28, l. 18, *oportet eōs vocārī Angelōs*.

18, 19. *nōs ad-mittimus*, 'we admit.'

20. *vestram*, 'your' = 'of you Boers.'

## Third Conjugation—Present Tense.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S. 1	mittō	mitto-r
2	mittis	mitte-ris *
3	mittit	mittit-ur
P. 1	mittimus	mittimur
2	mittitis	mitti-mini
3	mittunt	mittunt-ur

\* Note the change of *i* into *e*, which in this Conjugation appears in the Present Tense Passive. In the 1st and 2nd Conj. it came only in the Future.

INFINITIVE ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE PASSIVE.
mittere	mitti

## 33. [3rd Conjugation, Past Imperfect, Active and Passive.]

11. *iacebat*, 'lay,' from *iaceō*, 2nd Conj., § 22, l. 14. *in-fluēbat* (same ending), 'it flowed in,' from *in-fluō*, 3rd Conj.

12. *dīvidēbāt-ur*, 'was divided'; cp. *dīvidit-ur* in l. 13.

15. *incolēbant-ur*, 'were inhabited,' 'used to be inhabited'; cp. § 32, l. 6.

17. *hominēs magnīs et rōbustīs membrīs*, 'people with (= of) great and sturdy limbs'; cp. *virī animō fortī*, § 2, l. 14.

18. *eōs fuisse dicit*, 'declares them to have been' = 'says that they were'; cp. § 2, l. 10, and § 28, l. 16.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Tense has the same endings in the 3rd as in the 2nd Conjugation.

## Third Conjugation—Past Imperfect Tense.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S. 1	mittēbam	mittēba-r
2	mittēbās	mittēbā-ris
3	mittēbat	mittēbāt-ur
P. 1	mittēbāmus	mittēbāmu-r
2	mittēbātis	mittēbā-mini
3	mittēbant	mittēbant-ur

34. 2. *manēbat* . . . *insigne*, 'their honour and the badge of their ancient union remained.'

4. *legite*, 'read'; Imperative Plural of *legō*, 'I read.'

11. *in-fundēbant-ur*, lit. 'were poured in' = 'poured themselves in.'

15. *Germānicā origīne*, like *Celticā origīne*. § 21, l. 3.

16. The Belgae of Britain had come over from Belgium.

18. *et nōs et illi*, 'both we and they.'

19. *nōmen Germānōrum*, 'the name of Germans' = 'the name of Germans.'

### Third Conjugation—Imperative Active.

S. 2	mitte
P. 2	mittite

† 35. 7. *con-didērunt*, 'they founded,' lit. 'put together,' from *con-dō*. But *dedērunt* has been changed into *-didērunt*, and the Compound Verb has become 3rd Conj.; cp. on § 32, l. 9 (*per-dimus* from *per-dāmus*).

8. *ex quā tempore*, 'since which time'; cp. *ex quō*, § 25, l. 6.

13. *quā ex rē = ex quā rē*. *sibi sūmunt*, 'they take to themselves,' 'they give themselves.'

14. *sē posse*, 'themselves to be able,' depending on *dīcunt*.

*Britannōs vincere*, 'to conquer the Britons,' depending on *posse*; cp. *Britannōs vincere possumus*, 'we are able to defeat the Britons,' where *vincere* depends on *possumus*.

17. *novīs rēbus student*, 'they are bent on revolution (lit. new things)'; the verb *studeō* takes the Dative Case: lit. 'I am eager for' = 'I am bent on.'

18. *quan-dam*, 'a certain'; Acc. Sing. Fem. of *qui-dam*, *quae-dam*, *quod-dam*, in which only the first part is declined. Note that *quī-*, *quae-*, *quod-* does not here mean 'who' or 'which,' but rather 'something.'

23. *ob-tinēre* is a Compound of *ob* and *tenēre*, lit. 'to hold against'; hence 'to re-tain,' 'to main-tain'; not 'to ob-tain,' though that word is derived from *ob-tinēre*.

24. *con-ditum*, 'founded,' agreeing with *imperium*; it is the Passive Adjective from *con-dō*, but *dātus* has become *-ditus*.

## 36. [3rd Conjugation, Future, Active and Passive]

1, 2. *magnum periculum esse dicit*, 'declares a great danger to exist,' or 'declares the danger to be great'; cp. § 28, l. 16.

4. *con-scribere nuntiantur*, 'are reported to be enrolling.'

6. *multō plūr-ēs*, 'far more-men,' lit. 'more by much': cp. the Abl. in *multis annis ante*, 'many years before,' § 28, l. 4. *Plūr-ēs* is the Plural of *plūs*.

7. *colōniāe dēfendendae causā*, 'for the sake of defending the colony,' lit. 'of the colony to-be-defended'; compare *proeliū spectandī causā*, § 9, l. 23. Note the Adj. in *-endus*, *a*, *um* = *-andus*, *a*, *um* in the 1st Conj.

9. *dūcent*, 'shall lead'; from *dūcō*, § 33, l. 6.

9, 10. *prohibēbit eōs per-currere*, 'will prevent them from over-running,' lit. 'will prevent them to overrun.' The Infinitive is used as in § 26, l. 16, *prohibēbō vōs manēre*, 'I will forbid you to remain.'

12. *mittēt-ur*, 'will be sent,' from *mittō*.

14. *rōbur et aes triplex*, 'oak and triple brass,' a quotation from Horace, here applied to British ironclads, as in O.M. § 41:

15. *dēfendet*, 'will defend,' from *dēfendō*.

16. *vincēmus*, 'we shall conquer,' from *vincō*, § 35, l. 14.

19. *mittet*, 'will send.' *scribet*, 'he will write.'

20. *mittam*, 'I shall send.' *leget*, 'he will read.'

21. *col-ligam*, 'I shall col-lect.' *ex-scribam*, 'I shall write out.'

## Third Conjugation—Future Tense.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17)
S. 1	<b>mittam</b>	<b>mitta-r</b>
2	<b>mittēs</b>	<b>mittē-ris</b>
3	<b>mittet</b>	<b>mittēt-ur</b>
P. 1	<b>n ittēmus</b>	<b>mittēmu-r</b>
2	<b>mittētis</b>	<b>mittē-mini</b>
3	<b>mittent</b>	<b>mittent-ur</b>

Note that the endings in this Tense are quite different from those of the Future in the 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

7. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 3rd Conj.]

1. *Sī valēs*, etc. 'If you are well, it is well; I am well'—the regular way of beginning a letter in Latin, like the English 'I hope you are quite well.'

2. *aliquid novī*, 'something new,' like *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7. Understand *est*, 'there is.' The Greek proverb is mentioned by the Latin writer Pliny (*Historia Naturalis*, viii. ch. 17, § 42).

4. *litterās ultimās*, 'a final letter (or despatch),' 'an ultimatum.' *mis-ērunt*, 'they have sent,' from *mittō*.

5. *in-dix-ērunt*, 'they have declared,' from *in-dicō*. *nōbīs* (l. 4), 'upon us.'

7. *dē-dux-erimus*, 'we shall have with-drawn,' from *dē-ducō*. *audāciam*. The Accusative is often found in Exclamations without a Verb; cp. O.M. § 2, *ō beatās fēriās!*

10. *māiōr-ēs*, 'greater,' agreeing with *cōpiās* understood.

13. *virōrum*, 'of men,' after *milia*; cp. § 9, ll. 12 and 21; § 24, l. 15.

16. *prō-mis-it*, 'has promised,' from *prō-mittō*, lit. 'I let-go forth.'

20. *scrips-i*, 'I have written,' from *scribō*.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active by adding an -s: thus, *scrib-*, *scrips-* (the *b* being turned into a *p*); *dic-*, *dix-* (= *dic-*); *mitt-*, *mis-* (the *t* being dropped before the *s*). These are like *mans-*, *rīs-*, etc., in the 2nd Conjugation.

Third Conjugation—Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active.

	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
S. 1	<i>mis-i</i>	<i>mis-eram</i>	<i>mis-erō</i>
2	<i>mis-istī</i>	<i>mis-erās</i>	<i>mis-eris</i>
3	<i>mis-it</i>	<i>mis-erat</i>	<i>mis-erit</i>
P. 1	<i>mis-imus</i>	<i>mis-erāmus</i>	<i>mis-erimus</i>
2	<i>mis-istis</i>	<i>mis-erātis</i>	<i>mis-eritis</i>
3	<i>mis-ērunt</i>	<i>mis-erant</i>	<i>mis-erint</i>

INFINITIVE.  
*mis-isse*

38. (Note.) *Īdibus*, 'on the Ides,' Abl. of Time w<sup>th</sup> n. A letter generally takes about eighteen days to travel from the Cape to England. *red-ditae*, Passive Adj. from *red-dō*.

2. *horrida terra* is in apposition to *Āfrica*. (The metre is dactylic; see on § 30, l. 10.)

3. *poētae antiquī*, Ennius (born in the third century B.C.).

4. *vīc-imus*, 'we have conquered,' from *vincō*.

5. *dēfend-imus*, 'we have defended,' from *dēfendō*. *ut*, 'so far as.'

6. The thirteenth day before the 1st of November is October 20th, if we count in the 1st of November itself. The Roman months had the same number of days in them as ours.

7. *ad*, 'at' or 'near'—a meaning very like that of the Locative Case of Names of Towns.

9. *col-lēg-erant*, 'had collected,' from *col-ligō*, § 36, l. 21.

10. *prō-cueurr-ērunt*, 'ran forward,' 'advanced at a run,' from *prō-currō*; cp. *currit hōra*, § 32, l. 9.

11. *pepul-ērunt*, 'drove,' from *pellō*, § 35, l. 14.

11, 12. *lēgātus Britannicus*: General Sir W. Penn Symons. *vulnerātus*, an Adjective to *lēgātus Britannicus*. Cp. *ante oculos principis collocātus*, § 6, l. 11. Similarly in l. 15 below *situm* is an Adjective to *Saltum Cervinum*.

14. For *Saltus Cervinus*, *Castra Mariāna*, etc., see Vocab.

16. *nostrī* (Nom. Plur. Masc. of *noster*) = 'our-men,' lit. 'ours.'

17. *cohortēs*, here 'battalions' (of the British army).

19. *ascend-ērunt*, 'ascended,' from *ascendō*.

21. *ā-mis-ērunt*, 'lost,' from *ā-mittō* ('I let-go away').

23. *scribe*, Imperative Singular of *scribō*; see § 34 (end).

24. This letter from Cape Colony (*Colōnia*, l. 23) was written on Oct. 26—five days after the battle of Elandslaagte.

It will be seen that some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation form the Perfect Stem Active without any suffix: this is specially the case with stems ending in *nd*, like *dēfend-*, *ascend-*. Indeed *all* Verbs with stems in *nd*-, to whatever Conjugation they belong, form the Perfect Stem without any suffix (for instance, in the 2nd Conj., *respondeō*, Perf. Stem *respond-*).

Some of these Verbs, however, *prefix* a syllable to the Perfect Stem : thus *curr-*, *cucurr-* ; *pell-*, *pepul-*. This extra syllable is called the 'Reduplication' (= doubling).

Others of these Verbs change the Stem of the Present in some other way ; thus, *lĕg-* ('read'), *lĕg-* ; *col-lĕg-* ('collect'), *col-lĕg-* ; *vinc-*, *vīc-* : here a letter is dropped.

There are other ways in which the Perfect Stem may be formed ; instances will occur in the following sections.

### 39. [Perfects and Pluperfects Passive of the 3rd Conj.]

1. *S.V.B.E.E.V.* See beginning of the letter in § 37.

5. *re-ductae sunt*, 'have been led back,' from *re-dūcō*.

6. *col-lectae*, 'collected,' from *col-ligō*. *diē tricēsimō*, 'on the 30th.' This way of expressing dates in Latin is far more convenient than the old Latin way (cp. § 37, l. 20 ; § 38, l. 6), and is generally used in Latin letters written at the present day ; for instance, letters sent by Universities and intended to be read all over the world. It will be employed in the rest of this story ; except when a date falls exactly on the 'Kalends' or 'Nones' or 'Ides' of a month, or on the day immediately preceding or following one of these dates (for example, l. 22 below).

7. *com-missum est*, 'was fought,' 'was engaged-in,' from *com-mittō*, 'I let-go together.' The Passive Adj. *commissum* agrees with *proelium*.

10. *in ipsō tempore*, 'at the time itself,' 'at the very time,' 'in the nick of time.'

11. *auxiliō fuērunt*, 'were for an aid,' 'served as an aid' ; cp. on *ūsui erat*, § 23, l. 17.

13. *nostrōrum*, 'of our-men,' 'of ours' ; cp. *nostrī*, § 38, l. 16. *collem*, namely Nicholson's Nek.

14. *missae erant*, 'had been sent,' from *mittō*.

17. *actī*, 'driven,' Nom. Plur. Masc. of the Passive Adjective from *agō*, 'I drive' ; agreeing with *omnēs* (= *omnēs mūlī*).

19. *sē esse vidērunt*, 'they saw themselves to be' ; *sē* is the Accusative before the Infinitive *esse* ; like *eum* before *reporāvisse* in § 2, l. 10.

20. *circum-datī erant*, 'they had been surrounded,' from *circum-dō*, 1st Conjugation ; see note on § 32, l. 9.

21. *co-actī sunt*, 'were driven (= compelled),' from *cōgō* = *co-agō*.

22. *Nōnīs*, 'on the Nones,' Abl. of Time when. See Vocab.

## 40. [4th Conjugation, Present, Active and Passive.

2. **audimus**, 'hear,' with *nōs puerī*; from *audiō*.  
**veniunt**, 'come,' from *veniō*.
4. **custōdiunt-ur**, 'are kept,' from *custōdiō*.
5. **audire**, 'to hear,' Infinitive.
6. **venit**, 'comes.' The Present Tense is here used with the sense of a Past ('came'), as so often in narrative; cp. *inquit*, 'he says' = 'he said.'
7. **audite**, 'hear,' Imperative Plural. • *quod* = *id quod*, 'that which,' 'what.'
8. *lēg-i*, from *legō*, 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stem formed by lengthening the vowel.
9. **custōdiunt**, 'are guarding.'
10. **mūnire**, 'to fortify,' from *mūniō*.
12. *posu-ērunt*, from *pōnō*, 'I place,' 3rd Conj.; Perfect Stem irregularly formed.

It will be seen that the Present Tense of Verbs of the 4th Conjugation differs from that of the 1st and 2nd Conjugations only in having an *i* instead of an *a* or an *e* in the endings; cp. § 22 (end).

## Fourth Conjugation—Present Tense.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule, § 17).
S. 1	<b>audiō</b>	<b>audio-r</b>
2	<b>audīs</b>	<b>audi-ris</b>
3	<b>audit</b>	<b>audit-ur</b>
P. 1	<b>audīmus</b>	<b>audīmu-r</b>
2	<b>audītis</b>	<b>audīmini</b>
3	<b>audiunt</b>	<b>audiunt-ur</b>

INFINITIVE ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE PASSIVE.
<b>audire</b>	<b>audiri</b>

	IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.	IMPERATIVE PASSIVE.
S. 2	<b>audi</b>	Not yet learned
P. 2	<b>audite</b>	



41. [4th Conj., Past Imperf. and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. *veniebant*, 'were coming,' 'kept coming,' from *veniō*.

4. *enim* = *nam*; but it always stands *after* some other word in the sentence.

5. *audiēbāmus*, 'we heard,' 'we kept hearing'; on this Verb depends the Accusative with Infinitive (*Batāvōs parare*).

*mūniēbant*, 'they were fortifying,' from *mūniō*.

7. *nesciēbāmus*, 'we did not know,' from *nesciō*, a Compound of *ne-*, 'not,' and *sciō*, 'I know' (whence *scimus*, l. 8).

• 10. *ad-veniet*, 'will it arrive,' from *ad-veniō* (lit. 'come to').

12. *audiēmus*, 'shall we hear,' from *audiō*.

13. *custōdiet*, 'will guard,' from *custōdiō*.

16. *pugnābitur*, lit. 'it will be fought' — 'the war will be fought.' A 3rd Person Singular of the Passive Voice is often used without any Noun in the Nominative Case to which it belongs. A Noun of similar meaning to the Verb is understood; thus here *pugnābitur*, 'it will be fought,' means 'the fight will be fought.' The nearest thing to this use in English is 'it rains' = 'the rain rains'; 'it thundered and lightened' = 'the thunder thundered and the lightning lightened.'—Cp. § 32, l. 6

It will be seen that the *i* of the 4th Conjugation Verbs is retained—

(1) before *ēbam*, *ēbās*, *ēbat*, etc., in the Past Imperfect Tense.

Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations.

(2) before *am*, *ēs*, *et*, etc., in the Future Tense. Otherwise this Tense is the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

#### Fourth Conjugation.

##### Past Imperfect.

##### Future.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (§ 17).	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (§ 17).
S. 1	<i>audiēbam</i>	<i>audiēba-r</i>	<i>audiam</i>	<i>audia-r</i>
2	<i>audiēbās</i>	<i>audiēbā-ris</i>	<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiē-ris</i>
3	<i>audiēbat</i>	<i>audiēbāt-ur</i>	<i>audiet</i>	<i>audiēt-ur</i>
P. 1	<i>audiēbāmus</i>	<i>audiēbāmu-r</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>audiēmu-r</i>
2	<i>audiēbātis</i>	<i>audiēbā-mini</i>	<i>audiētis</i>	<i>audiē-mini</i>
3	<i>audiēbant</i>	<i>audiēbant-ur</i>	<i>audient</i>	<i>audient-ur</i>

## 42. [Tenses from the Perfect Stem Active, 4th Conjugation.]

4. **audīv-imus**, 'we have heard,' from *audiō*.6. **ad-vēn-it**, 'it arrived,' from *ad-veniō*, § 41, l. 10.  
*missa est*; cp. *missae erant*, § 39, l. 14.10. **audīv-ērunt**, 'heard' or 'have heard.' *vocant-em*, 'calling,' Accusative of the Active Adjective formed from the Verb *vocō*, 'I call'; 'heard the country calling' = 'heard their country's call'; cp. § 12, ll. 20, 21.11. *pridīe*, 'on the day before,' may take an Accusative\* (*Kalendās*).13. **custōdīv-ērunt**, 'have guarded,' from *custōdiō*, § 40, ll. 4, 9.  
*mūnīrī*, Infinitive, Passive of *mūnīre*, § 40, l. 10.14. **mūnīv-ērunt**, 'they have fortified.'16. *com-missum*, Passive Adjective from *com-mittō* (§ 39, l. 7), agreeing with *proelium*; cp. § 5, ll. 12, 13, *propter victōriam ā Britannīs reportātam*; § 15, l. 4.It will be seen that the Perfect Stem Active of most Verbs of the 4th Conjugation is formed in the same way as that of *spectō* (1st Conj.) and *deleō* (2nd Conj.); cp. *spectāv-*, *dēlēv-*, *audīv-*. The only difference is that in the 4th Conjugation the vowel before the *v* is *i*.But there are some Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which do not form the Perfect Stem in this way; for instance, *veniō* forms *vēn-*, without any suffix; cp. *legō*, *lēg-* (3rd Conj.).Note that in no Conjugation do all verbs form the Perfect Stem in the same way: even in the 1st Conjugation, which is far the simplest, we have *dō*, *ded-* and *stō*, *stet-*.

## Fourth Conjugation—Tenses formed from the Perfect Stem Active.

		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
S.	1	<b>audīv-ī</b>	<b>audīv-eram</b>	<b>audīv-erō</b>
	2	<b>audīv-istī</b>	<b>audīv-erās</b>	<b>audīv-eris</b>
	3	<b>audīv-it</b>	<b>audīv-erat</b>	<b>audīv-erit</b>
P.	1	<b>audīv-imus</b>	<b>audīv-erāmus</b>	<b>audīv-erimus</b>
	2	<b>audīv-istis</b>	<b>audīv-erātis</b>	<b>audīv-eritis</b>
	3	<b>audīv-ērunt</b>	<b>audīv-erant</b>	<b>audīv-erint</b>

INFINITIVE F.  
**audīv-isse**

Similarly conjugate **vēn-ī**, **-istī**, **-it**, etc.

13. [Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in ēre, Present, Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

3. *ac-cipiēs*, with *tū*, 'you will re-ceive'; from *ac-cipiō*, a Compound of *ad* and *capiō* ('I take to myself,' 'I ac-cept,' 'I re-ceive').

5. *audiū-eris*, 'you will have heard,' Future Perfect of *audiō*. *cupiēbam*, 'I desired,' 'I wanted,' from *cupiō*. Note the Past Imperfect Tense, which is here used just as we might use the Past Tense in a similar passage of an English letter. In a similar way we have *scribēbam* in l. 2 and *poteram* in l. 4.

6. *nihil litterarum*; cp. *quid novī*, § 31, l. 7; *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.

8. *faciētis*, with *tū et discipulī tuī*, 'will do'; from *faciō*. *accipiēmus*, 'we shall receive,' from *accipiō*.

9. *capimus*, with *nōs*, 'we take,' here = 'we feel,' or 'we suffer'; from *capiō*; contrast *audimus* from *audiō*.

11. *capere*, 'to take,' from *capiō*; contrast *audire*, from *audiō*. *cupiunt*, 'they desire,' 'they want,' from *cupiō*.

12. *capient*, 'they will take (it).' *noctēs diēsque*; see Vocab.

13. *iaciunt*, 'they throw,' from *iaciō* (a different Verb from *iaceō*, § 22, l. 14).

14. *faciunt*, 'they make'; *facere*, 'to do'; both from *faciō*. *dē-ficit*, 'is running short,' from *dē-ficiō* (a Compound of *dē*, 'away,' and *faciō*).

16. *fodere*, 'to dig,' from *fodiō*.

17. *sē re-ciunt* (a Compound of *re-*, 'back,' and *capiō*), 'they be-take themselves.'

18. *inter-ficiunt-ur*, 'are killed,' from *inter-ficiō* (lit. 'I make away with').

It will be seen that Verbs like *capiō*, *cupiō*, *faciō* are conjugated in the Past Imperfect and Future Tenses exactly like *audiō*; that is, according to the 4th Conjugation. In the Present Tense the 1st Person Singular and the 3rd Person Plural are also according to the 4th Conjugation; and the other Persons of this Tense differ from the 4th Conjugation only in having a short *i* where the 4th Conjugation has a long *i*. But in the Infinitive these verbs have the endings of the 3rd Conjugation (Active, -ēre, not -īre; Passive, -ī, not -irī). So too in the Imperative.

Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ēre—Pres., Past Imperf., Future.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	capiō	capiēbam	capiam
	2	capis *	capiēbās	capiēs
	3	capit	capiēbat	capiet
P.	1	capimus *	capiēbāmus	capiēmus
	2	capitis *	capiēbātis	capiētis
	3	capiunt	capiēbant	capiēt

INFINITIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
capere *	S. 2	capē *
	P. 2	capite *

## PASSIVE VOICE. (Rule § 17.)

		PRESENT.	PAST IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
S.	1	capio-r	capiēba-r	capia-r
	2	capē-ris *	capiēbā-ris	capiē-ris
	3	capit-ur	capiēbāt-ur	capiēt-ur
P.	1	capimu-r *	capiēbāmu-r	capiēmu-r
	2	capī-mini *	capiēbā-mini	capiē-mini
	3	capiunt-ur	capiēbant-ur	capiēnt-ur

INFINITIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
capī *	S. 2	Not yet learned
	P. 2	

## 44. [Perfect Stem Active of Verbs in -iō with Infinitive in -ēre.]

1. *hōs*, 'these' = 'the last.'

3. *ac-cēp-imus*, 'we have re-ceived,' from *ac-cipiō*.

8, 9. 'These the Dutch had settled-on, like eagles on their nests'; *in-sēderant* comes from *in-sidō*, 3rd Conj. (which is derived from *sedeō*, 2nd Conj.).

\* These forms are the same as in the 3rd Conjugation.

11. *fēc-erunt*, 'made,' from *faciō*. *cēp-erunt*, 'took,' from *capiō*.  
 12. *con-lēc-erunt*, 'threw,' from *con-iciō* (less correctly spelled *con-iiciō*), which is a Compound of *con* and *iaciō*, § 43, l. 13.  
 15. *in-cēp-erunt*, 'they began,' from *in-cipiō* (lit. 'I take on').  
 17. *fōd-erat*, 'had dug,' from *fodiō*, § 43, l. 16.  
 19. *pugnātum est*, 'it was fought' = 'a battle was fought'; see note on *pugnābitur*, § 41, l. 16.  
 20, 22. *inter-fēc-erunt*, 'killed,' from *inter-ficiō*. *sē trā-lēc-erunt*, 'threw themselves across' = 'crossed'; *trā-* = *trans*.  
 23. *sē re-cēp-erunt*; cp. *sē re-cipiunt*, § 43, l. 17.
- The dates of the battles referred to are Nov. 23rd (Belmont), Nov. 25th (Graspan or Enslin), Nov. 28th (Modder River).
- It will be seen that *capiō*, *faciō*, *iaciō* and *fodiō* form their Perfect Stems without any suffix, and with a lengthened vowel, *cēp-*, *fēc-*, *iēc-*, *fōd-*. *Cupiō*, on the other hand, forms the Perf. St. *cupiū-* (like *audiū-*, from *audiō*).

† 45. 5. *lēgātus Britannicus*, Lord Methuen.

7. *sicut Britannis antiquis*, 'just-as to the ancient Britons.' Caesar tells us that the Britons were not accustomed to fight regular battles in the Roman style.

- 9, 10. Cp. O.M. § 37 (about the British charioteers).  
 11. *vīginti tantum*; cp. *duo tantum vel tria*, § 24, l. 14.  
 16. *Batāvus*, 'the Dutchman' = 'the Dutch general,' here Cronje.

18. *acceptā*, Pass. Adj., from *accipiō*, agreeing with *clāde*.

† 46. 4. *con-spiciit-ur*, 'is discerned,' from *con-spiciō*.

7. *egātō*, General Wauchope.

8. *iacu-erunt*, from *iaceō*; contrast *iēc-erunt* from *iaciō*.

11. *perurbātī sunt*, 'were thrown into disorder'; Perf. Pass. *alius super alium*, 'other over other' = 'one over the other.'

13, 14. *ut poterant*; cp. *ut poterāmus*, § 38, l. 5.

18, 19. *alius exercitus*, commanded by General Gatacre. The disaster of Stormberg occurred early on the morning of Dec. 10th. ad; cp. § 38, l. 7.

21. *eōrum*, neuter, 'of those things.'

- † 47. 5. *imperātor noster* ; see § 42, II. 10, 11.  
 6. *mīlia*, in apposition to *exercitus*.  
 13. *legiō*, here 'brigade' (of the British army) ; see Vocab.  
 20. *nostrōrum* ; cp. § 39, I. 13.

48. [Present Injunctive of 'sum.']

1. *Ante paucōs diēs*, 'before a few days' = 'a few days ago.'  
 [*Abhīnc* is not used with *diēs*.]

7. *septem et sexāgintā annōs nātus*, 'born sixty-seven years'  
 'sixty-seven years old.'

8. *ad* ; cp. § 38, I. 7. *ce-cid-it*, from *cadō*.

9. *facit*. The Present Tense is often thus used after *dum*, instead of the Past Imperfect.

11. *sit*, 'may there be.'

13. *poēta Rōmānus* : Plautus, in his play called 'The Persian' (iv. 4, 73).

14. 'The Cape of Storms,' so called by its first discoverer in 1486—a Portuguese named Diaz.

18. *quantum*, Accus. of *quantus*, which means 'how great,' but may be translated 'as' after *tantus* 'so great' (I. 17).

18, f. *quod prō-sit*, 'may which-thing be helpful' = 'and may it be helpful.' The verb *prō-sum* means literally 'I am for,' 'I am on-the-side-of,' and takes the Dative Case (*reīpublicae nostrae*).

It will be seen that *sit* differs from *est* in the same way as 'be' differs from 'is' in English ; cp. 'it is so' with 'be it so' or 'so be it.' *Est* and 'is' express a **fact** ; *sit* and 'be' express a **desire** or **command**. They are therefore very like Imperatives in meaning. We may call them 'Injunctives,' understanding by that name a form of the verb which 'enjoins' or expresses an 'injunction' ; for an injunction is very much the same as a command.

Injunctive forms exist in all Persons, Singular and Plural, and in several different Tenses. The whole group of injunctive forms might be called an 'Injunctive Mood' ; just as the whole group of imperative forms is called the 'Imperative Mood,' and the whole group of forms which state facts is called the 'Indicative (= indicating) Mood.' But the Mood here called 'Injunctive' is commonly called 'the Subjunctive Mood' from a use of it explained below (§ 50).

## Present Injunctive of 'sum.'

S.	1	sim,	may I be
	2	sis,	may you be
	3	sit,	may he be
P.	1	simus,	may we be
	2	sitis,	may you be
	3	sint,	may they be

The Present Injunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding the above forms to *pos-*: thus *pos-sim*, 'may I be able,' etc.

## 49. [Present Injunctive of the 1st Conjugation.]

2. *nihil novī*; cp. *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2; and § 43, l. 6.

3. *prope* is here an Adverb; 'nearly,' 'almost.'

6. *pugnēmus*, 'let us fight'; cp. § 36, l. 15 f., *etiam atque etiam pugnābimus* ('we shall fight'). The Injunctive is rather like a Future Indicative in meaning, though there is a difference. Think what is the exact meaning of 'We'll (= we will) fight and we'll conquer'; is it more like 'we shall fight' or 'let us fight'?

*vīc-erimus* is a Future Perfect Indicative, 'we shall have conquered.'

7. *Deus det*, 'may God give (or grant).' *Nē dēspērēmus*, 'let us not despair,' from *dēspērō*. Note that 'not' with Injunctives is *nē* (instead of *nōn*).

8. *festinēmus lentē*, 'let us hurry slowly,' 'steady, boys, steady!'; cp. *Festinā* (Imperative) *lentē*, 'hurry slowly,' 'not too fast!'; O.M. § 21. *fēcūt*, 'did' (= hurried slowly); the verb *faciō* is often used in Latin, like 'do' in English, to avoid repeating a verb.

9. *poēta Rōmānus*, Ennius; see § 38, l. 3 and l. 2.

10. *cunctandō*, 'by delaying,' the Ablative of a Noun in *-ndum* formed from a Verb; cp. *spectandī* (Gen.), § 6, l. 4, etc.

*nōbīs*, 'for us' (Dative), with *restituit*. *rem=rempublicam* (§ 31, l. 21). Fabius Maximus was called *Cunctātor*, 'the Delayer,' because he avoided fighting the enemy in pitched battles; he thus saved the Roman Republic when it was nearly overthrown by Hannibal.

12. *ūniūs et māiōris populi* goes with *corpus*, 'the body of one and a greater nation.'

14, 15. Lines by Dr. J. E. Sandys, Public Orator in the University of Cambridge, on presenting the Hon. E. Barton, of New South Wales, for a Doctor's degree (May 10th, 1900). *estō*, l. 15, is an Imperative of *sum*, 3rd Pers. Sing., and means 'be' (which meaning might also be expressed by the Injunctive *sit*); *estō foedus*, 'be there a league,' or 'let there be a league.' *omnis = tōtū*s, 'of the whole.'

The metre is 'trochaic,' like that of Tennyson's *Locksley Hall* :—  
 "Cōmrades, leāve me hēre a little, | whīle as yēt 'tis eārlly mōrn."

17. *cuī*, 'for which,' may here be translated 'on which' after *occidit*. From *occidēre*, 'to set,' comes *occidens*, 'the setting' (properly 'the setting sun') = 'the West.'

18, 19. *maximam laudem . . . posse*, 'judge it to be the greatest praise to themselves to be able to say.'

20, 21. Lines by Dr. Sandys (June 17, 1897); a translation of Rudyard Kipling's line—

"I am daughter in my mother's house, but mistress in my own."

The metre is trochaic, like the second half of the lines of *Locksley Hall*—"while as yēt 'tis eārlly mōrn."

22-26. The numbers here mentioned were largely increased afterwards.

25. *nātū*, from *nātus*, 4th Decl. See Vocab.

27. *quī = eī quī*, 'those who'; cp. *quod = id quod*, § 46, l. 7. In English, too, 'who' sometimes means 'he who'; thus, 'Who steals my purse, steals trash' (Shakspeare, *Othello*). The metre of the line of Horace is dactylic; cp. on § 30, l. 10.

29. *Deus salvam prae-stet*, 'may God render safe' = 'God save.' Notice that 'God save the Queen' may also be translated by an Imperative in Latin: *Deus salvam fac* (Imperative of *faciō*) *Rēginam*, lit. 'God make safe the Queen.' The English 'save' in 'God save' is an Injunctive.



## Present Imperative of the First Conjugation.

S. 1.	pugnem,	may I fight or let me fight
2.	pugnēs,	may you fight
3.	pugnet,	may he fight or let him fight
P. 1.	pugnēmus,	may we fight or let us fight
2.	pugnētis,	may you fight
3.	pugnent,	may they fight or let them fight

From Active Imperatives may be formed Passives. Thus—

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE (Rule § 17).
S. 1	spectem, may I see, etc.	specte-r, may I be seen, etc.
2	spectēs	spectē-ris
3	spectet	spectēt-ur
P. 1	spectēmus	spectēmu-r
2	spectētis	spectē-mini
3	spectent	spectent-ur

50. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

4. *ut . . . expugnent*, 'that they may storm,' depending on *operam dant*: notice *ut* = 'that'; hitherto we have had it only in the sense 'as' (which occurs also below, l. 14), or 'how.' *vī*, from *vīs*, an irregular Noun; see Vocab.

5. *quō . . . dent*, 'on which they may deliver,' depending on *diem constituunt*. This Subordinate Clause introduced by *quō* is very like the independent sentence introduced by *Quod* in § 48, l. 18.

10. *pugnātur*; cp. *pugnābitur*, § 41, l. 16, *pugnātum est*, § 44, l. 19.

The Present Tense in this passage (ll. 7-12) refers to past time.

11. *ut sōl obscurētur*, 'that the sun is darkened,' depending on *tantus*.

12. *ut prōpulsent*, 'that they repel,' depending on *tam ācrem*.

13. *et (ut, understood) salva praestent*, 'and (that) they render safe.'

17. *vicitant*, 'they live'; 'they' = 'the inhabitants.'

18. *lāc*, 'milk,' which is so necessary for invalids.

19. *dēnārīis vīgintī con-stant*, lit. 'stand at 20/-' = 'cost 20/-'. For the Abl. in this sense, cp. O.M. § 9, *magnō pretiō vēnumdant*.

22. *ut . . . explōrent-ur*, 'that what is being done among the enemy may be investigated': *quae = ea quae*, 'those things which'; cp. § 49, l. 27, and contrast § 46, l. 21, *eōrum quae apud nōs agēbantur*.

25. *ut spectent*, 'that (or in order that) they may see.'

25, 26. *ita . . . ut . . . applicētur*, 'in such a way that it may be brought.' *sī sit*, 'if it be.'

It will be seen that the 'Subjunctives' of this section do not differ in form from the 'Injunctives' of §§ 48, 49; that is, the same words (*sim, sis, sit*, etc., *pugnem, pugnēs, pugnet*, etc.) may be used either as 'Injunctives' or as 'Subjunctives.' The name Subjunctive is here given to an Injunctive when it stands in a Subordinate Clause.\* But there is also a difference of meaning, which in some cases is important:

(1) Instead of 'may I,' 'may you,' 'may he,' etc., the Subjunctive is translated 'I may,' 'you may,' 'he may,' etc.

(2) In some cases the meaning 'may' seems to disappear altogether; see l. 11, *obscurētur*, 'is darkened'; l. 12, *prōpulsent*, 'they repel'; l. 13, *praestent*, 'they render.' [At first sight it is difficult to see why Subjunctives are used in these sentences at all; they seem not to differ in meaning from Indicatives. Perhaps *applicētur* in l. 26 may help to explain the difficulty; it means 'may be brought,' but it might be translated 'is brought.' Similarly *ut prōpulsent* (l. 12) means properly 'as to repel,' rather than 'that they repel'; *ut sol obscurētur* (l. 11) is rather more difficult, because it is Passive, but we may translate 'as for the sun to be darkened'; and this 'for the sun to be darkened' is not so very different from 'that the sun may be darkened.'] †

\* The word 'Sub-junctive' in itself means nothing more than 'sub-joining,' as though the Subjunctive Mood were the Mood of sub-joined or sub-ordinate clauses. But it is best to understand it as short for 'Sub-injunctive'; that is, 'Subordinate Injunctive.'

† This attempt to explain the Subjunctive in Clauses denoting Result may be omitted, if too difficult of comprehension for the pupil. He will then have to regard the Subjunctive in such Clauses as having no special meaning, and as a merely formal substitute for the Indicative.

## PREPARATION

† 51. *scilicet imperator novus*, Lord Roberts; § 48, l. 3.  
*vincere scit*, 'knows how to conquer,' lit. 'knows to conquer.'

4-14. The Present Tense refers to past time; cp. § 50, ll. 7-12.

4. *Caledoniēs*, = 'Highland regiments.'

4, 5. *quī dent*, 'who shall deliver' = 'to deliver.'

6. *equitum Anglorum*, etc.: under General French.

6, 7. *ut equestris*, 'that they shall ride' = 'to ride.'

13. *solitō densiōrem*, 'denser than usual.' In this phrase the Ablative of the Adjective *solitus* means 'than.'

• 17. *Salvi sitis!* a common form of greeting, lit. 'may you be safe-and-sound!' - 'good day to you.'

19, 20. *ut liberemus*, 'that or in order that, we may set-free'  
 = 'to (or in order to) set-free.' The proper English, however,  
 for the phrase *oppidum obsidiōne liberare* (lit. 'to set-free a town  
 from siege') will be found in the Vocab. *Deo sit grātia*,  
 'thanks be to God,' 'thank God.'

22, 23. *nōmine Adamantopolis* (Gen.), 'the name of A.'; cp.  
*nomen Germanorum*, § 34, l. 19. *adamanta movēre*, 'to move  
 adamant,' means to bend a thing that is inflexible. *Adamanta* is  
 the Greek Accusative of the Greek word *adamas* (*adamant*).

It will be seen that Subjunctives and Injunctives may often be  
 translated by the word 'shall' in English; and *ut* or *quī* followed  
 by a Subjunctive may be conveniently translated by the Infinitive  
 with 'to,' or 'in order to'; see lines 4, 5, 6, 7, 19, 20 above.

52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]

2. *liberātā*, agreeing with *Adamantopolī* (Ablative).

4. *nulla mora*; that is, he is not a *Cunctator*, like the Roman  
 Q. Fabius Maximus, § 49, l. 8. *Noster* = 'our general.'

5, 6. *quī oppugnent*, like *quī dent*, § 51, ll. 4, 5.

6-8. *dum equitēs eum itinere prohibeant*, 'while the cavalry shall  
 prevent him from the march (= from marching).' *ā septen-*  
*trionibus*, 'on the North.'

8. *videat imperator noster*, 'let our general see-to-it.'

9, 10. *nē . . . capiat*, 'that the State shall suffer no harm';  
*nē* here = *ut nē*, 'that not' or 'lest'; cp. the *nē* in § 49, l. 7,  
*nē desperemus*. *quid detrimenti*; cp. *quid novi*, § 31, l. 7.  
 For *capio* = 'suffer,' see § 43, l. 9.

10. *anxia*, fem. of *anxius* ; because 'I' is here a woman.

14. *Deus avertat*, 'may God avert.' *prohibeat nē*, literally 'may he prevent that . . . not,' or 'may he prevent lest' ; but the meaning is 'God forbid that.' It is a special idiom in Latin to use *nē* instead of *ut* after *prohibeo*, as though the Subordinate Clause were a separate sentence (*Nē sit hīc diēs āter*, 'let not this day be a black one').

15, 16. *Det ut vincāmus*, 'may he grant that we may conquer.'

16, 17. *ut salūtem dicam*, 'that I send greeting,' depending on *rogat*. *ut valeās*, 'that you be-well,' depending on *cūrā*, 'take care.' Note that the Latin Subjunctive is here translated by an English Subjunctive, instead of by 'may,' 'let,' or 'shall.'

It will be seen that the Present Injunctives of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conjugation have an *a* in the ending ; whereas in the 1st Conjugation the Present Injunctive has an *e*.

**Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.**

ACTIVE VOICE.				
	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.	
S. 1	habeam	mittam	audiam	
2	habeās	mittās	audiās	
3	habeat	mittat	audiat	
P. 1	habeāmus	mittāmus	audiāmus	
2	habeātis	mittātis	audiātis	
3	habeant	mittant	audiant	

PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17).				
	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.	
S. 1	habea-r	mitta-r	audia-r	
2	habeā-ris	mittā-ris	audiā-ris	
3	habeāt-ur	mittāt-ur	audiāt-ur	
P. 1	habeāmu-r	mittāmu-r	audiāmu-r	
2	habeā-mini	mittā-mini	audiā-mini	
3	habeant-ur	mittant-ur	audiant-ur	

Verbs in *-iō*, with Infinitive in *-ere* (like *capiō*, *capere*) form the Present Injunctive according to the 4th Conjugation : *capiam*, *capias*, *capiat*, etc.

## 53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 'sum.']

4. *vēnit, vidit, viciit*, 'came, saw and conquered.' *Veni, vidi, vici* was what Caesar wrote in one of his despatches.

7. *in quibus suī tūti essent*, 'in which his-men should be safe'; cp. § 52, ll. 5, 6.

8. *nē pos-set*, 'that he might not be able'; *pos-set* = *pot-esset*.

11-13. *ita . . . ut . . . ab-essent*, 'in such a way that they should be distant'; cp. § 50, l. 25, 26, *ita . . . ut . . . applicētur*.

15, 16. *salūtem dēspērāvit*, 'despaired-of deliverance'; see Vocab.

17. *dē-didit*, Perfect of *dē-dō*; cp. *con-didērunt*, § 35, l. 7.

*Diēs Maiūbensis*, Feb. 27th; see § 52, l. 10.

18. *Colōnia* = Cape Colony, as in § 38, l. 23.

23. *properandō*, 'by hastening,' 'by acting rapidly'; cp. § 49, l. 10.

It will be seen that the Past Imperfect Subjunctive differs from the Present Subjunctive just as 'should' differs from 'shall,' or 'might' from 'may.'

## Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 'sum.'

S. 1. <i>essem</i> ,	<i>I should be, or I might be</i>
2. <i>essēs</i> ,	<i>you should be, or you might be</i>
3. <i>esset</i> ,	<i>he should be, or he might be</i>
P. 1. <i>essēmus</i> ,	<i>we should be, or we might be</i>
2. <i>essētis</i> ,	<i>you should be, or you might be</i>
3. <i>essent</i> ,	<i>they should be, or they might be</i>

The Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* is formed by adding *-sem*, *-sēs*, *-set*, *-sēmus*, *-sētis*, *-sent* to *pos-*.

## 54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of the 1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th Conj.]

2. *Fabius ille noster*, 'that Fabius of ours,' General Sir Redvers Buller.

3. *ut liberāret*, lit. 'that he might set-free' = 'to set-free,' depending on *operam dabat* (Past Imperfect); cp. § 50, l. 4, *ut expugnet*, depending on *operam dat* (Present). *bis*: in the neighbourhood of Spion Kop and of Vaalkrantz.

4. *trā-iēcērat*, 'he had crossed'; much commoner than *sē trā-iēcērat*, 'he had thrown himself across,' § 44, l. 22. *ut locō movēret*, 'that he might dislodge' (lit. 'move from the place').

5. *et* (*ut* understood) *facēret*, 'and might make.'

6. *ut re-dūcēret*, lit. 'that he should lead back' = 'to lead back.' *Cōgō* may also take the Infinitive in Latin, as in § 39, l. 21, *coacti sunt sē dēdere*.

9. *ut paucī facile prohibērent*, 'that a few men easily prevented,' depending on *tam altōs*, 'so high'; we might translate 'high enough for . . . to prevent.'

11, 12. *ut . . . tolerārent*, 'as to endure.'

13. (*ut* understood) . . . *ascendērent*, '(as) to ascend.'

14. (*ut* understood) . . . *capērent*, '(as) to seize.' (*ut*)  
 . . . *sus-tinērent*, '(as) to sus-tain,' 'as to face.'

16. *red-didit*, Perfect of *red-dō*; like *dē-didit*, *con-didit*.

16, 17. *ut omnēs hominēs . . . audirent iudicārentque*, 'so that all men heard . . . and judged.'

19. *pro-fūd-isse*, Perfect Infinitive of *pro-fundō*. *ter*, including the first attempt at the battle of Colenso, § 47.

20. *ut . . . pellērent*, 'that they might drive,' 'to drive,' depending on *contenderant*; cp. *viam facere* (Infinitive) *contendērunt*, § 46, l. 14.

22. *ut . . . pugnārent*, 'that they should fight' = 'to fight,' depending on *constitu-ērunt*, 'they resolved.' *dōnec vincērent*, 'until they should conquer.'

### Past Imperfect Subjunctive.

ACTIVE VOICE.				
	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
S. 1	spectārem	habērem	mittērem	audīrem
2	spectārēs	habērēs	mittērēs	audīrēs
3	spectāret	habēret	mittēret	audīret
P. 1	spectārēmus	habērēmus	mittērēmus	audīrēmus
2	spectārētis	habērētis	mittērētis	audīrētis
3	spectārent	habērent	mittērent	audīrent

## PASSIVE VOICE (Rule, § 17).

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
S. 1	spectāre-r	habēre-r	mittere-r	audire-r
2	spectārē-ris	habērē-ris	mitterē-ris	audirē-ris
3	spectārēt-ur	habērēt-ur	mitterēt-ur	audirēt-ur
P. 1	spectārēmu-r	habērēmu-r	mitterēmu-r	audirēmu-r
2	spectārē-mini	habērē-mini	mitterē-mini	audirē-mini
3	spectārent-ur	habērent-ur	mitterent-ur	audirent-ur

Verbs in *-iō* with Infinitive in *-ēre* like *capīō*, *capēre*, form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive according to the 3rd Conjugation : *capērem*, *capērēs*, *capēret*, etc. Contrast the Present Subjunctive of these Verbs (according to the 4th Conjugation, § 52, end).

† 55. 1, 2. *alterō et vicēsimo*, '2nd and 20th' = '22nd.'

14. *ō diem pulchrum*, 'oh the glorious day!'; cp. § 37, l. 7.

16. *lux*, 'light' = 'hope,' 'joy.' *af-ful-sit*, 'shone,' 'dawned,' Perfect of *af-fulgeō*, which takes the Dative (*oppidō illi*, 'upon that town').

18. *quō . . . essēmus*; cp. *in quibus essent*, § 53, l. 7.

21. *fabricāta*, Passive Adj. from *fabricō*, agreeing with *insula*.

† 56.\* *Pax Britannica*; cp. *Pax Rōmāna*, § 14.

2. *sunt ex quō*; like § 25, ll. 5, 6, *fuerant ex quō*.

6. *Praetōriae*, in *ipsō capite*; like § 25, l. 16, *Duroverni*, in *capite*.

7, 8. *vōs* (Accus.) *gaudēre* (Infin.), depending on *sciō*.

8-10. *nōs* (Accus.) *triumphāre* (Infin.), depending on *putātis*.

21. *dux fortissime*: Colonel (now Major-General) Baden-Powell.

23. *quod agās*, 'what (or whatsoever) you shall do'; *quod = id quod*.

26. *pugnant-ēs*, Active Adjective from *pugnō*, agreeing with *quī*.

35. *facinus egregium et audax*, 'an act of great gallantry.'

\* This long letter (No. 56) is intended to be broken up into several lessons, according to convenience. As it contains no new grammatical features, some teachers may prefer to run over it rapidly.

37. A.S. = *Annō Salūtis*, 'in the year of Grace'; cp. l. 83.
39. Take *prō patriā pugnānt-em*, 'fighting for one's country,' with *vīlām expīrāre* = 'to die.'
53. *illud*, 'that,' referring to *principātus Britannicus*, but agreeing (according to a common idiom) with *patrōcinium*, 'protectorate.'
- 54-58. The skeleton of this long sentence is *Videāmus nē* (55) *turpissimum sit* (57) *nōn posse* (58). Cp. § 52, ll. 8, 9, *videat . . . nē . . . capiat*. *turpissimum sit*, 'it may be a most inglorious thing.' After *nōn posse* take *obtinēre et conservāre*, and then *id quod accepi-mus*. The words from *ut* to *sic* (55, 56) may be left out till the rest of the sentence has been translated: *ut* = 'as,' and *sic*, 'so'; *pulcherrimum fuit*, 'it was a most glorious thing'; *tantam* goes with *glōriam*; and *nōbīs* is Dative after *trādere*.
58. *Illud*, 'that,' 'the following thing,' points on to *quod*, 'that,' l. 59.
- 61, 62. *Batāvīs licet*, 'it is allowed to (or lawful for) the Dutch,' *esse*, 'to be,' *civibus Britannicis*, 'British subjects.' *Licet*, like *piget* and *oportet*, can only be used in the 3rd Person.
65. *ut . . . dicere possit*, 'that he shall be able to say' = 'to be able to say'; cp. § 49, ll. 18, 19, *dicere posse*.
67. A line of a poet of the fifth century A.D. (Claudius Rutilius Namatianus); metre, dactylic.
68. *quae . . . ea = ea quae*.
- 70-75. Lines of Claudian, a poet of the fourth century A.D. [De Consulatu Stilichonis, iii. 150 fol.], in dactylic metre.
70. *Haec est quae*, 'She it is who.'
73. *quōs = eōs quōs*; 'has called those whom she has conquered citizens.'
- 74, 75. *dēbēmus quod*, 'we owe it that.' *gens ūna*, 'one family' or 'one nation.'
76. *Camillus*, the great Roman statesman of the fourth century B.C., who built a temple to Concord in honour of the reconciliation of the Patricians and the Plebeians.
78. *in-scribāntur*, 'shall be inscribed.'
- 80, 81. Lines of Statius, a poet of the first century A.D. [Thebaid, xii. 573 f.]. *estō*, 'granted,' lit. 'be it so'; cp. § 49, l. 15. *ce-cid-ere* is a poetical form of *ce-cid-erunt*, from *cadō*; cp. § 48, l. 8.



## EXERCISES & CONVERSATIONS.

1. [Adjectives of the 3rd Declension in —, *is*, *e*.]

### (A) Conversation.

[The questions in this and similar Conversations are supposed to be asked by the teacher, and the answers to be given by the pupil, except where the contrary is indicated.]

Ubi est villa patris tui?

Villa patris mei in Cantio, inter Dubras et Rutupias, sita est.

Cur non apud patrem tuum nunc es?

Quia pater meus in Africa Meridiana habitat.

Patruusne tuus tibi loco parentis est?

Ita est. Inter ferias apud patruum meum sum.

Ubi eris post finem mensis Septembris?

Post finem feriarum apud magistrum meum, ad Ventam Belgarum ero.

Ubi habitant amici tui, Marcus et Alexander?

Amici mei prope Dubras habitant.

Quid nunc lectitas?

Vitam Agricola nunc lectito. Agricola dux celebris primo saeculo post Christum natum fuit.

(B) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'the month of September' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'the 1st of September' in all Cases of the Plural.

(C) It is the month of September. After the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. In<sup>1</sup> the month of October I shall give many hours every-day to lessons. Before the end of the month of December there will be holidays. I am now reading about Agricola, the famous<sup>2</sup> general of the Romans. The lives of famous generals delight me much. I like to<sup>3</sup> read about famous generals and about our famous island. In<sup>1</sup> the times of Agricola our island was not famous.

<sup>1</sup> 'Time when' is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition, as in O.M. (Ora Maritima) § 10, *secundō saeculō*, 'in the 2nd century.'

<sup>2</sup> Use *celeber*, *celebris*, *celebre* for 'famous' throughout this exercise.—In what Case must 'the famous general' be? Think of the meaning ('about the famous general'), and compare Preparations § 1, l. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Say, 'I gladly (*libenter*) read,' and so wherever 'I like to —' occurs in these exercises.

(D) In the times of Romulus, the first king<sup>1</sup> of the Romans, there were only ten months in the Roman year. The name of the first month was *Martius*, of the second *Aprilis*, of the third *Māius*, of the fourth *Iūnius*, of the fifth *Quintilis*, of the sixth *Sextilis*, of the seventh *September*, of the eighth *October*, of the ninth *November*, of the tenth *December*.

(E) But Numa, the second king, gave two new months to the year. He called the first *Iānuārius*,<sup>2</sup> and the second *Februārius*. After the times of Gaius Julius Caesar the Romans used to call the seventh month *Iūlius*; and after the times of Augustus the first emperor,<sup>3</sup> they used to call the eighth month Augustus.

2. [*is, ea, id*—Singular Number.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'that emperor,' 'that island,' 'that name,' in all Cases of the Singular.

In the following exercises of this section translate 'he,' 'him,' 'his' by Cases of *is* ('that-one' = 'that-man'), and 'she,' 'her,' 'her' by Cases of *ea* ('that-one' = 'that-woman').

(B) Gaius Julius Caesar was the first conqueror of Britain. My uncle has told me<sup>3</sup> about him. Tacitus mentions his victory in the Life of Agricola. That book tells about another<sup>4</sup> conqueror of Britain. His name was Agricola. He was-in-command-of<sup>5</sup> Britain during<sup>6</sup> seven years.

(C) The Emperor Vespasianus created him general of the Roman forces in the year 78 A.D.,<sup>7</sup> and gave him<sup>8</sup> great forces.

<sup>1</sup> In what Case must 'the first king' be? The meaning is 'in the time of the first king.' Compare C, note 2 above.

<sup>2</sup> The word *Iānuārius* must agree in Case with the word 'first' (=the first month). Similarly *Februārius*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'to me' (Dative Case).

<sup>4</sup> Use *alius*, which is regular in most of its Cases.

<sup>5</sup> Use *prae-sum*, which takes the Dative Case. See O.M. § 40: *ubi quattuor rēgēs Britannis prae-erant* ('were-in-command-of the Britons,' or 'were-commanders to the Britons').

<sup>6</sup> Use *per*.

<sup>7</sup> Wherever the letters A.D. (= *Annō Domini*) occur in these exercises say *post Christum natum*; and wherever the letters B.C. (=before Christ) occur, say *ante Christum natum*. And in each case say 'in the 78th year' (instead of 'in the year 78'), 'in the 55th year' (instead of 'in the year 55'), and so forth.

<sup>8</sup> What Case? Think of the meaning ('him' here = 'to him').

His daughter was the wife of Tacitus. Her<sup>1</sup> name was Julia. Tacitus loved her much, and gives her great glory in the book about Agricola.

(D) In the month of August my uncle had told us (*Dat.*) about the expeditions of C. Julius Caesar against Britain. He transported the Roman forces into Britain in the year 55 B.C. and won a victory over <sup>2</sup> the southern Britons. One cause of that expedition<sup>3</sup> was the expectation of booty. In the next year Caesar prepared a second and greater expedition, and won a second victory. But that victory too was not great. Tacitus does not praise it.<sup>3</sup>

3. [*is, ea, id*—Plural Number.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘those emperors,’ ‘those islands,’ ‘those names,’ in all Cases of the Plural.

In the following exercises of this section translate ‘they,’ ‘them,’ ‘their’ by Cases of *eī, eae, ea*.

(B) Accordingly after those victories of C. Julius Caesar the Britons were free, as they had been before them.<sup>4</sup> The midland Britons had not fought against Caesar. Caesar did not subdue them. The Romans had not sold their children into slavery. The father of Cunobelinus was their king in the first century B.C.

(C) The name of that king was Tasciovanus. His son was Cunobelinus. The names of those kings were famous through the whole island. Cunobelinus was king not only of the midland Britons, but also of the southern Britons. He had united them into one people. Some<sup>5</sup> of those tribes were Celts, but some of them were Germans or Belgians. The name of their city stands on coins of that age.

4. [*is, ea, id*—continued.]

(A) *Conversation.*

Quis fuit pater Cunobelini?

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘of that-woman’ (Genitive of *ea*).

<sup>2</sup> Say ‘from.’

<sup>3</sup> ‘It’ means *that victory*. What, then, must be the Gender of the Pronoun in Latin?

<sup>4</sup> ‘Them’ means *those victories*. What Gender, then, in Latin?

<sup>5</sup> ‘Some of those tribes’ means ‘some *tribes* of those tribes.’ What Gender, then, in Latin? Compare *nonnulla ex navigiis* (O.M. § 11), *nonnulli ex Britannis*, etc.

Is rex Tasciovanus fuit.

Quis fuit frater Cunobelini?

Unus ex fratribus eius Epaticcus fuit.

Unde ea nomina nobis nota sunt?

In nummis Britannicis ea lectitare possumus.

Ubi regnabat Cunobelinus?

In Britannia mediterranea et meridiana regnabat: caput regni eius Camulodunum erat.

Quando regnabat Cunobelinus?

Eo tempore regnabat cum Tiberius et Caligula principes Romanorum erant. Ei primo saeculo post Christum natum imperitabant.

(B) During the reign of Cunobelinus Tiberius and Caligula were the Roman emperors. They thought about an expedition against our remote and unconquered<sup>1</sup> island. But they never entered it. Its inhabitants did not love Roman emperors, and Roman emperors did not love them. The English Channel<sup>2</sup> had given them freedom.

5. [*ēius* and *suus*, *a*, *um* contrasted.]

\* In doing the exercises in this section remember carefully the explanation of the difference between *ēius* and *suus*, *a*, *um* given in the Preparations (§ 5); and remember also that *ēius*, being the Genitive Case of *is*, *ea*, *id* and meaning 'of that-one,' is unchangeable, and does not agree with the word to which it belongs, as the Adjective *suus*, *a*, *um* does. Thus 'his uncle' will be either *patruus ēius* or *patruus suus* (—'his own uncle').

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'his uncle,' 'his aunt,' 'her uncle,' 'her aunt,' using (1) *ēius*, (2) *suus*, *a*, *um*.

(B) Caligula was the third emperor of the Romans. His father was Germanicus, a brave and good man. The Romans had given him that name because he had won a victory over the Germans. Germanicus had named his<sup>3</sup> son Gaius, but the soldiers used-to-call him Caligula. Caligula was a coward. His mind was full of folly.

(C) Once he not only thought about an expedition against Britain, but also prepared it. He prepared his expedition in the year 40 A.D. But when he arrived at the English Channel he

<sup>1</sup> Say 'free' or 'untouched' (*intactus*, *a*, *um*).

<sup>2</sup> Say 'the Gallic Channel' (*fretum Gallicum*), as in O.M.

<sup>3</sup> Think whose son is meant.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'arrived to (*ad*).'

was-afraid, and hurried homewards with his legions. He captured some shells, and called them the booty of the conquered ocean.

6. [*ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘the emperor himself,’ ‘the wife herself,’ ‘the town itself,’ ‘death itself,’ in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for ‘the Britons themselves’ in all Cases of the Plural.

(B) Caractacus himself was brave, but some of the other captives feared death. The Roman emperor had carried-off the captives to Rome.<sup>1</sup> Caractacus did not fear the emperor himself; he did not fear death itself. To the emperor himself he exhibited<sup>2</sup> a brave mind. By<sup>3</sup> his courage he won<sup>4</sup> freedom for himself and for his wife and his brothers. He was a true son of Cunobelinus himself.

7. [*ille, illa, illud.*]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for ‘that soldier,’ ‘that colony,’ ‘that town,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

In the exercises of this and the two following sections (8, 9) translate *that* and *those* by Cases of *ille, illa, illud*, Sing. or Plur.

(B) The Romans had placed a colony of veteran soldiers at Colchester.<sup>5</sup> That town was not any-longer<sup>6</sup> the capital of a British kingdom. It was a Roman colony. For the Romans used-to-call towns where soldiers lived ‘colonies.’<sup>7</sup> That colony was the first Roman town in Britain.

(C) That town was not any-longer<sup>6</sup> dear to the Britons. For those Roman veterans had won victories over the Britons, and had sold many British captives into slavery. Those captives

<sup>1</sup> See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Use *praestō*.

<sup>3</sup> ‘By’ here means ‘by means of’; how will it be translated in Latin?

<sup>4</sup> Say he prepared (*parāvī*) freedom for himself, etc. ‘For’ is here (as generally) to be translated by the Dative Case, without a Preposition.

<sup>5</sup> Locative Case; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

<sup>6</sup> ‘Any-longer’ after ‘not’ is *iam*.

<sup>7</sup> Make ‘colonies’ agree in Case with ‘towns.’

were the sons or the daughters of Britons. The fathers and mothers of those captives did not love those veterans. At Colchester the Romans had set-up an image of Victory. The Britons did not love that image of Victory.

8. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

(A) *Conversation.*

Quid fuit verum nomen reginae audaci Icenorum?  
 Tacitus illi reginae nomen dat Boudicca.  
 Quid fuit verum nomen duci audaci Silurum?  
 Tacitus illi viro nomen dat Carataco.  
 Ubi de illa regina et de illo duce lectitavisti?  
 In historia Anglica de illis lectitavi.  
 Quid significat verum nomen illius reginae?  
 Verum nomen illius reginae linguā Celticā *Victoriam* significat.  
 Unde illud tibi notum est?  
 In indice verborum lectitavi.  
 Quid significat verum nomen filii Cunobelini?  
 Significatio illius nominis mihi non nota est.  
 Illud nomen linguā Celticā *carum* significat.  
 Quid autem significat falsum illud nomen Caractaci?  
 Nihil significat.  
 Sed cur illum virum plerumque Caractacum nominamus?  
 Quia in uno ex libris manuscriptis illa forma nominis stat:  
 sed error est.

(B) "Those<sup>1</sup> Roman forces," said Boadicea, "are-away in Wales. That city where the veterans live is without walls. We do not fear those veterans; they are cowards. Listen to me, Britons! We shall take that city by storm.<sup>2</sup> We shall burn the temple of that emperor Claudius, the new god<sup>3</sup> of the Romans."

9. [*ille, illa, illud*—continued.]

But those Roman legions hastened from Wales to London.<sup>4</sup> And, although they were not able to save that city from disaster, they won a great victory over the forces of Boadicea. In those legions there-were only ten thousand men.<sup>5</sup> And, as one writer

<sup>1</sup> For the order of words in Latin, see Preparations, § 7, l. 16.

<sup>2</sup> 'To take by storm' is *expugnare*.

<sup>3</sup> What Case? Preparations, § 1, l. 7.

<sup>4</sup> See Preparations, § 5, l. 26.

<sup>5</sup> Imitate the construction which occurs twice in § 9—ll. 11, 12 ('seventy thousands of Romans'), and ll. 20, 21.

affirms, Boadicea was-in-command-of a hundred and twenty thousand men. But, if Tacitus tells the truth,<sup>1</sup> those ten thousand Romans slaughtered eighty thousand British men and women.

10. [*hic, haec, hōc*.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for ‘this distinguished man,’ ‘this famous island,’ ‘this fine monument,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

• (B) This victory of the Romans was the cause of death to Boadicea, the queen of the Iceni. To her<sup>2</sup> life was not dear after this victory of the Romans. One of the Romans too, the prefect of the camp of the second legion, put himself<sup>3</sup> to death after this battle. He<sup>4</sup> had-been-away in Wales with the second legion while Suetonius was-winning this victory. Accordingly to him<sup>4</sup> too life was not dear.

11. [*hic, haec, hōc*—continued.]

Julius Agricola was one of the generals of the emperor Vespasian. The daughter of this famous man was Julia, the wife of Tacitus. Tacitus praises the father of this woman, as a just and merciful man, in the book about the life of Agricola. This book tells about ‘Britain subdued.’<sup>5</sup> For after the times of Agricola there was a long peace in this island.

12. [*hic, haec, hōc*—continued.]

In the seventh year of his command Agricola defeated the Caledonians, near the ‘Graupian mountain.’ This<sup>6</sup> is the name of the mountain in the Life of Agricola. We nowadays call this mountain, or these mountains, the ‘Grampian’ mountain or the ‘Grampian’ hills. But we are mistaken. The real name of these hills was ‘the Graupian hills.’ This<sup>6</sup> is the form of the name in the book of Tacitus.

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘affirms true-things’ (neut. plur. of *vērūs, a, um*).

<sup>2</sup> Use a Case of *haec* (‘this-woman’).

<sup>3</sup> Use *sē*, as in § 9, l. 23.

<sup>4</sup> Use a Case of *hic* (‘this-man’).

<sup>5</sup> For ‘subdued’ use the Adjective *dēbellātus, a, um*, formed from the verb *dēbellō*.

<sup>6</sup> Think what ‘this’ means. Here it means ‘this name’; and in the last sentence of this exercise it means ‘this form.’

13. [*hī, haec, hūc*—continued.]

These Highlanders<sup>1</sup> were not cowards, as Agricola declared; they were ready to die for<sup>2</sup> their country. To free their country from the Romans, and to repel<sup>3</sup> slavery from their wives and children, this<sup>4</sup> was the purpose of these Highlanders. "Drive<sup>5</sup> these Romans into the sea!" said Galgacus. But the Dutch cohorts drove the Highlanders out of the mountains. These cohorts were serving under the Roman standards.

## 14. [Comparatives of Adjectives.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'a braver soldier,' 'a more miserable death,' 'a more beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'juster men,' 'keener defenders,' 'more savage wars,' in all Cases of the Plural.

(B) No soldiers were ever braver<sup>6</sup> than the ancient Romans. But they were cruel. They used to slaughter the unhappy barbarians and burn their cottages. And nothing is more-cruel<sup>6</sup> than to sell the wives and children of the enemy into slavery. But what was more dangerous to the Roman Empire than a turbulent province? Agricola was kinder or less cruel than other Roman victors.

## 15. [Superlatives of Adjectives.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'the bravest soldier,' 'the most miserable death,' 'the most beautiful building,' in all Cases of the Singular; and the Latin for 'the justest of all men,' 'a very merciful man,' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) The fate of the slaughtered Britons was unhappy; but the fate of the captives was more-unhappy. For slavery is more-miserable<sup>7</sup> than death. To the Highlanders, as to all

<sup>1</sup> Say *Caledonians*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate 'for' by *pro*, with the Ablative.

<sup>3</sup> The same Latin verb (meaning 'drive-off') may be used for 'repel,' and for 'drive.'

<sup>4</sup> Use the Neuter Singular.

<sup>5</sup> Remember that the Comparative of an Adjective must agree with the word of which it is said, just like the Adjective itself. In what Gender, Number and Case must 'braver' be?

<sup>6</sup> What Gender?

<sup>7</sup> Use *miser, a, um* for 'miserable,' as well as for 'unhappy.'



men, wives and children were most-dear.<sup>1</sup> And to all brave men the fatherland is very-dear.<sup>2</sup> But of all Roman conquerors Agricola was the justest, the kindest, the most-merciful. And Britain had been a most-turbulent province.

(C) The Romans were very brave soldiers ; but they were very cruel. C. Julius Caesar was a more cruel conqueror than Agricola, but he was less cruel than many of the Romans. In the civil wars he showed himself<sup>3</sup> a very merciful conqueror of his enemies. He won a very famous victory over Pompeius, but he did not put Roman captives to death after the battle. In Gaul, however, he was most inhuman, and slaughtered a large number of the Helvetii, the Nervii,<sup>4</sup> and other Gallic tribes.

16. [Present, Past Imperfect and Future Passive—1st Conjugation.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

'I am often praised by (ab) my friends,'

'I used to be praised by my friends,'

'I used to be delighted with this book,'

in all Persons of these tenses. (In the 2nd Person say 'by your friends,' in the 3rd Person 'by his friends,' and so forth.)

(B) The courage of the Nervii is mentioned by Caesar in the second book of his Gallic War. He declares them to have fought<sup>5</sup> with the greatest<sup>6</sup> pluck. And in other books other barbarous tribes of Gaul are praised by him. "Our lands are-being-devastated by the Romans," they said ; "our men are-being-slaughtered ; our women and children are-being-carried-off into slavery. Death is less miserable than slavery."

(C) In Britain, too, after the victory of Suetonius Paulinus the lands of the inhabitants were-being-devastated, and the inhabitants themselves were-being-carried-off into slavery. At Colchester<sup>7</sup> the Trinobantes used-to-be-annoyed with most-cruel injuries<sup>8</sup> by the Roman veterans, and used-to-be-called cowards

<sup>1</sup> What Gender? (*Uxor* is fem., *liberi* masc.) See § 12, l. 12.

<sup>2</sup> For 'very dear' use the Superlative, as for 'most dear' and 'dearest.'

<sup>3</sup> See § 14; ll. 9 and 10.

<sup>4</sup> What Case?

<sup>5</sup> See § 2, ll. 10 and 11.

<sup>6</sup> Use *summus*, *a*, *um*; cp. § 10, l. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Locative Case; see Preparations, § 5, l. 22.

<sup>8</sup> In this and the next two sentences imitate § 7, lines 11-15.

and slaves.<sup>1</sup> The town itself was-being-adorned with very-beautiful Roman buildings, although it was not being strengthened with walls. In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was a Roman, not a British town. Accordingly it was not loved by the Britons.

17. [Passive Voice, continued—same Tenses.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

'I shall be praised by my friends,'

'I shall be delighted with this book'

in all Persons of the Future tense.

(B) After the times of Agricola the Britons took-pleasure in<sup>2</sup> Roman buildings and Roman baths. During the second and the third and the fourth centuries A.D. very-beautiful temples and country-houses and schools were-being-built in Britain, and the towns were-being-strengthened with very-good walls. Colchester was-being-surrounded<sup>3</sup> with walls during the first and second centuries A.D.

(C) The life of the Britons was then more civilized. But liberty was gradually being forgotten.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly in the fourth century A.D. the Britons were less brave soldiers than they had been in the times of Cassivellaunus and Caractacus. Remains of very-fine amphitheatres and baths are-seen at the present day at Silchester and at Colchester.

(D) *Conversation*.

Nonne bella hodierna minus saeva sunt quam bella antiqua fuerunt?

Minus saeva sunt.

Cur hoc affirmas?

Bella antiqua saeviora fuerunt quam bella hodierna, quia temporibus antiquis captivi a victoribus trucidabantur vel in servitutem venundabantur.

<sup>1</sup> In what Case must 'cowards' and 'slaves' be? They must agree in Case with the Noun of which they are said (the Trinobantes).

<sup>2</sup> For 'to take pleasure in' say 'to be delighted with' throughout this exercise, and use the Past Imperfect tense (Passive) wherever the tense is Past in English.

<sup>3</sup> Use the Passive of *circum-dō*, 'I surround.'

<sup>4</sup> For 'was-being-forgotten' say 'was-being-given to oblivion' (§ 15, l. 17).

Verum est. Nos hodierni, igitur, clementiores sumus in bello quam Romani antiqui fuerunt ?

• Clementiores sumus ; nam feminae liberique a nobis non trucidantur, neque in servitutem veniunt.

Num Romani milites fortiores fuerunt quam nostri ?

Non fortiores fuerunt ; nulli milites umquam fortiores fuerunt quam nostri.

Nonne Romani milites fortissimi fuerunt ?

Fortissimi fuerunt ; sed nostri quoque fortissimi sunt.

• Num et Romani et nostri fortissimi esse possunt ?

Possunt ; sed neque Romani fortiores fuerunt quam nostri sunt, neque nostri minus fortes sunt quam Romani fuerunt.

#### 18. [Questions and Exclamations.]

##### (A) Conversation.

*Mark.* At what o'clock shall we play <sup>1</sup> tennis to-day ?

*Antony.* At 12 o'clock,<sup>2</sup> and perhaps at 3 o'clock and at 6 o'clock.

*Alexander.* Do you not sometimes play tennis before breakfast?

*Antony.* Yes,<sup>3</sup> but not often. My uncle does not like <sup>4</sup> to play tennis before breakfast.

*Mark.* How-many <sup>5</sup> hours have you given to studies to-day ?

*Antony.* Not yet two hours.

*Alexander.* How glad I shall be <sup>6</sup> when it is <sup>7</sup> 12 o'clock !

##### (B) Conversation—continued.

*Mark.* Do you like to read the *Agricola* of Tacitus ?

*Antony.* It is too difficult.

*Mark.* When shall we swim in the sea ?

*Alexander.* Won't it be better to swim in the sea before lunch ?

*Mark.* At what o'clock will your uncle arrive home ?

*Antony.* At 1 o'clock.

*Alexander.* Why don't we walk to the sea at-once ?

*Antony.* It is now 12 o'clock.

*Mark and Alexander.* Bravo, hurrah !

<sup>1</sup> Use *operam dare* with the Dative : § 1, l. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Count the hours from 6 o'clock in the morning ; 12 o'clock will be the sixth hour. (The Latin number of the hour will always be exactly opposite to that indicated by the hour-hand of a modern clock.)

<sup>3</sup> Say 'So it is' or 'You tell the truth' (*věra narrās*).

<sup>4</sup> Use *libenter*, as in Ex. 1 (C), note 3.

<sup>5</sup> *Quot* (indeclinable).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'how-much I-shall-be-delighted.'

<sup>7</sup> Say 'shall-be' (Future tense).

(C) *Conversation.*

Quid vos pueros inter ferias maxime delectat ?

Inter ferias ludo trigonali maxime delectamur.

Quid, cum Ventae Belgarum eritis, vos maxime delectabit ?

Cum Ventae Belgarum erimus, per hiemem folle, per aestatem pila delectabimur.

Nonne scholis et studiis delectabimini ?

Nonnulli ex pueris scholis et libris delectabuntur, sed non omnes. Num multi ?

Fortasse non multi.

Magistrine ludis pilarum delectantur ?

Nonnulli ex magistris ludis operam dant : non sine scientia pile dextra laevaue captatur.

Num sine scientia follis volans geminatur et revocatur ?

Magna est scientia follem volantem geminare et revocare.

19. [*quī, quae, quod* and *quis, quid*—in questions.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Decline the Latin for 'Which Roman general ?' 'Which Roman legion ?' 'Which Roman town ?' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Which Roman general was the first conqueror of Britain ? To which general did the emperor Claudius entrust infantry and cavalry forces for-the-sake of subduing Britain<sup>1</sup> ? Aulus Plautius was the commander of the Roman forces in Britain in the year 43 B.C. Which Roman legions were in Britain in that year ? The Second, and the Ninth, and the Fourteenth and the Twentieth<sup>2</sup> legions. From which part of Europe did the emperor transport these four legions into Britain ? From Germany, where they were serving.

(C) The general of the Second legion was Vespasianus. Who was Vespasianus ? He had been praetor at Rome ; and after the death of Nero the Romans created him Emperor.<sup>3</sup> In which land did he win his first victories ? In Britain, where he is reported<sup>4</sup> to-have-fought<sup>5</sup> thirty battles, to-have-taken-by-storm twenty towns, and<sup>6</sup> to-have-subdued the Isle of Wight.

<sup>1</sup> Imitate the construction in § 6, l. 4 (*rēgem spectandī*), or that in § 9, ll. 22 and 23 (*proeliū spectandī*).

<sup>2</sup> Remember that *legiō* is Feminine.

<sup>3</sup> Compare § 2, l. 19, and Ex. 7 (B), note 7.

<sup>4</sup> Use the Passive of *narrō*.

<sup>5</sup> Perfect Infinitive, ending in *-isse* ; cp. § 2, l. 11.

<sup>6</sup> Omit this 'and' in translating.

By whom is he said<sup>1</sup> to have won these victories? By Suetonius, the Roman writer. Which towns did he take by storm? It is not known.

20. [*quī, quae, quod*—without questioning sense.]

The words put in brackets in the following exercise are to be translated into Latin, together with the rest of each sentence. The reason for putting them in brackets is to show that they make a *complete little sentence within a larger sentence*, like one Chinese box within another. The Case of the word *quī* will be seen by thinking of the little sentence as if it were a separate sentence. Thus '*whom* the Romans created Emperor' is like '*him* the Romans created Emperor' or 'the Romans created *him* Emperor.'

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Translate the following pairs of sentences into Latin, using *is* for 'he,' and *quī* for 'who.'

Augustus (he was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Augustus (who was the first Roman Emperor) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (him the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Tiberius (whom the Romans created Emperor in A.D. 14) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (his father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Caligula (whose father was Germanicus) did not enter Britain.

Claudius (to him Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Claudius (to whom Germanicus was father) was the conqueror of Britain.

Nero (about him we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

Nero (about whom we read in the Annals of Tacitus) was the fifth Roman emperor.

(B) In the following pairs of sentences translate 'it' by the Feminine or Neuter of *is*, and 'which' by the Feminine or Neuter of *quī*.

Augustus did not enter the island (we call it Britain).

Augustus did not enter the island (which we call Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (we call it Britain).

Claudius was the conqueror of the island (which we call Britain).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in it the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

Camulodunum was a town of the Trinobantes (in which the Romans placed a colony of veterans).

<sup>1</sup> Use the Passive of *affirmō*.

(C) Vespasianus (whom the Romans created Emperor after the death of Nero) was the ninth emperor of the Romans. For between Nero and Vespasianus there were three other Emperors. What were their names? Their names were Galba and Otho and Vitellius. Galba (who had served in Britain under Claudius together with Vespasianus) was-emperor<sup>1</sup> for six months in the year 69 A.D. Otho (whom the soldiers of the Germanic legions had created Emperor, was-emperor<sup>1</sup> for only<sup>2</sup> three months, and then put himself to death. Vitellius (whom his-own soldiers murdered after he had-been-emperor<sup>2</sup> for eight months) was very-cowardly and very-lazy.

21. [qui, quae, quod—continued.]<sup>3</sup>

(A) To whom did the Emperor Vespasianus entrust the chief command<sup>4</sup> of the British legions after the rebellion of Boadicea? The-man<sup>5</sup> (to whom Vespasian entrusted the chief command of the British legions) was Agricola (whose daughter was the beloved wife of Tacitus). The 'British legions' were the Roman legions (which were-serving in Britain). And the Roman legions (of which Otho had-been the general) were-called the 'Germanic legions,' because they were-serving in Germany.

(B) After the victory of the Romans a Roman writer called the Ocean (by-which<sup>6</sup> the western boundaries of the Roman Empire were surrounded) 'the Roman Ocean.' In the second century A.D. Britain was a Roman province. And before the end of the fourth century the Britons (who had fought with so-great pluck against C. Julius Caesar and Aulus Plautius and Agricola) were not any-longer desirous of liberty. For the delights of the 'Roman peace' were dearer to them than liberty.

(C) Conversation.

Quis vallum illud magnum aedificavit, quod inter Luguwallum et Segedunum situm erat?

<sup>1</sup> Use the Verb *imperiō*, 'I am emperor'; cp. § 3, l. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Perfect tense. What word for 'after'? See Preparations, § 2, l. 1.

<sup>3</sup> In this exercise it will be seen that subordinate sentences introduced by *qui, quae, quod* (and here enclosed in brackets) are sometimes necessary to the sense of the principal sentences to which they belong.

<sup>4</sup> See § 10, l. 9.

<sup>5</sup> Use *is* for 'the-man.'

<sup>6</sup> Use the Ablative, without a Preposition.

Ei qui illud vallum aedificavit nomen fuit Hadriano.

Quid fuit nomen ei qui vallum inter Clotam et Bodotriam situm aedificavit ?

Nomen ei fuit Antonino Pio.

Qui homines fuerunt contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit ?

Homines contra quos Agricola in Caledonia bellavit Picti fortasse fuerunt.

Quid fuit nomen collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit ?

Collibus in quibus victoriam magnam reportavit nomen fuit Monti Graupio.

Verane est haec forma nominis ?

Vera est ; nam haec est forma nominis quae in libro Taciti de vita Agricolae stat.

Cur, igitur, nos hodierni colles Grampios vocamus ?

Nomen quod nos hodierni illis collibus damus falsum est.

22. [2nd Conjugation—Present, Past Imperfect and Future—Active.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

‘I see Richborough,’

‘I used to see many ancient buildings,’

‘I shall see my friends to-morrow,’

in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) Among<sup>1</sup> the very-beautiful Roman villas, whose foundations we see<sup>2</sup> at-the-present-day in Britain, was the villa which was situated in the Isle of Wight. This villa, which the Romans built in the first century A.D., has three parts. In the part which looks<sup>3</sup> to the West you see a vestibule and a hall and a dining-room and a kitchen. The vestibule and the hall have tessellated pavements. The pavement of the vestibule is made of<sup>4</sup> red and white cubes. The cubes of the hall are red and white and blue and black. In the part of the villa which looks to the North the slaves used-to-live.<sup>4</sup>

(C) *Conversation*.

Nonne libenter ruinas aedificiorum antiquorum vides ?  
Libenter video.

<sup>1</sup> Say ‘in the number of.’

<sup>2</sup> For ‘to see’ use *videō* throughout this exercise : for ‘to look’ use *spectō*.

<sup>3</sup> Say ‘fabricated out-of,’ *fabricātus* (a, um) ex.

<sup>4</sup> ‘To live’ here means ‘to dwell.’

Fuistine in insula Vecti ?

Numquam fui ; sed reliquias illius villae quam Romani ibi aedificaverunt aliquando videbo, ut spero. Num prope oram maritimam iacet ?

Temporibus Romanis prope oram maritimam iacebat ; sed nunc procul a mari iacet. Nonne tibi aliud aedificium notum est, quod quondam prope mare iacebat sed nunc procul abest ?

Castellum Rutupinum quondam prope mare iacebat et hodie procul abest : nam temporibus antiquis totus campus, qui nunc inter castellum et oram maritimam iacet, pars maris erat.

Quid tibi de villa Romana in insula Vecti sita notum est ?

Vestibulum et atrium et triclinium et culinam habebat.

Quid est in vestibulo et atrio ?

Vestibulum et atrium pavimenta tessellata habent.

Num pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus ?

Nulla pavimenta tessellata in Castello Rutupino videmus.

23. [4th Declension and 2nd Conjugation—continued.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for ‘a British harbour,’ ‘the right hand,’ ‘the left wing,’ in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) The whole villa is built in a square shape,<sup>1</sup> of which only three sides have buildings. Between the three wings lies a large open-space. In the northern wing there is a well, from which water used-to-be-provided by the slaves. About the use of the southern wing nothing is known. But at<sup>2</sup> the eastern end of this wing there are the remains of baths. You do not see these baths in the picture which stands on page 16<sup>3</sup> of this book. A Roman officer once used-to-live in this villa.

(C) In Roman times this villa lay not far from the sea. For the sea used-to-stretch to the place where the villa stands. The place now lies two or three miles<sup>4</sup> from the sea. There was once a harbour near the villa, as the keeper affirms. Many Roman coins of Domitianus, the son of Vespasianus, and coins of Hadri-

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 23, l. 15. For ‘is built’ use *est* with the Passive Adj.

<sup>2</sup> Use *ad*.

<sup>3</sup> Say ‘on the 16th page.’

<sup>4</sup> Say ‘thousands of paces.’



anus, and of Antoninus Pius and of his wife Faustina, are dug-up near the villa. Many very-beautiful urns too and glass-vessels lay under the soil. The Saxons are-said<sup>1</sup> to-have-burnt the villa in the fifth century A.D.

24. [4th Declension—continued.]

(A) How many miles was Richborough Harbour distant from the Gallic port when the vessels mostly sailed to Britain? It was distant about forty miles. The name of this Gallic port was Gessoriacum. At the present-day this port has<sup>2</sup> the name *Boulogne*. The Roman poet Lucan<sup>3</sup> mentions Richborough Harbour; and the poet Juvenal<sup>4</sup> praises the oysters of Richborough Harbour. He declares them to have been very-good.

(B) There were other very-famous ports on the coast of Southern Britain in Roman times. Among<sup>5</sup> these ports was the port of Lymne,<sup>6</sup> in which the fleet of Agricola used-to-have its special station. In the second century A.D. there were Roman ships in all the British ports. The Romans used-to-call the Roman ships which had their station in British ports the 'British fleet.' Even<sup>7</sup> before Roman times ships used-to-sail from Gaul to these ports for-the-sake of commerce.

25. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Conjugate the Latin for—

'I have destroyed the building,'

'I had provided water,'

'I shall have held the coin in my hand,'

'I have had the book in my hands,'

'I laughed, but I answered nothing,'

in all Persons of these tenses.

(B) The Angles and the Saxons destroyed many very-famous Roman buildings. Among the buildings which they destroyed was the very-beautiful villa of which we see the remains in the Isle of Wight. Hengist and Horsa had many ships and many men.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Passive of *affirmō*.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'to this port there is.'

<sup>3</sup> *Lūcānus*.

<sup>4</sup> *Iuvenālis*.

<sup>5</sup> Say 'in the number of.'

<sup>6</sup> *Portus Lemanis*.

<sup>7</sup> Say 'already.'

They landed their ships in <sup>1</sup> the Isle of Thanet. When did they hold their course to Britain? In the fifth century A.D. In what land had they had their home? In Jutland.

(C) Why did the Britons provide a home for the Angles and Saxons in the Isle of Thanet? Why did Hengist and Horsa hold their course to Britain? Why did they not remain <sup>2</sup> in Jutland? When the Romans recalled their legions from Britain in the fifth century A.D., the Britons were not able to drive-off their enemies, the Picts and Scots, who were-devastating the lands of northern Britain. Accordingly they implored the help of the Angles and Saxons against the Picts and Scots.

(D) But afterwards the unhappy Britons were sorry that <sup>3</sup> they had provided a home for these men in Britain. After a few years the Angles and Saxons were not any longer the friends of the Britons. They fought against the Britons, and devastated their lands. Gildas, a British writer of that age, calls the Angles and Saxons 'barbarians' and 'savage wolves.'

26. [2nd Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active—continued.]

(A) The Romans had taught the Britons the knowledge of the true God. But the Angles and Saxons used-to-worship many gods. Accordingly they destroyed the Christian churches which the Romans had built in Britain. The Britons did not rejoice that the Romans had not remained in Britain. For the Angles and Saxons were more cruel enemies than the Romans had been.

(B) When the Britons implored the help of the Romans against the Angles and Saxons, the Romans answered thus: "We are not able to lend you <sup>4</sup> help." The Britons were very sorry <sup>5</sup> that they had not forbidden the Angles and Saxons to land their ships in the Isle of Thanet.

(C) *Conversation.*

Quid in Castello Rutupino vidisti?

Muros castelli vidi, et Crucem Sancti Augustini et cuniculum qui sub magnam partem areae pertinet.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'to'; cp. § 23, l. 3, and § 25, l. 12.

<sup>2</sup> The Perfect Stem of *maneo* is *mans-*; see Latin Vocabulary.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'it vexed the Britons that'; cp. § 23, l. 18.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'to provide help for you.'

<sup>5</sup> Say 'it vexed the Britons much'; cp. § 1, l. 9.

Nonne muri altiores quondam fuerunt quam nunc sunt ?

Altiores fuerunt ; nam partem murorum aetas delevit, pars alte  
sub solo iacet.

• Quam longus est ille cuniculus ?

Aqua haeret.

Nonne per totum cuniculum ambulavistis ?

Ita est ; sed memoria non teneo.

Quid vidistis in cuniculo ?

Locus obscurus est ; sed cereos in manu tenuimus, quos custos  
castelli praeberat. Puteum altum vidimus.

• Cui erat usui puteus ille in cuniculo situs ?

Ex illo puteo aqua praebebatur si castellum obsidebatur.

Quando castellum obsessum est ?

De fortuna castelli nihil constat. Sed fortasse Angli et Saxones  
castellum deleverunt, postquam Romani copias suas ex  
Britannia revocaverunt.

Nonne piguit Britannos quod Anglis Saxonibusque domum in  
insula Tanati praeberant ?

Piguit. Nam ut Romani primo saeculo post Christum natum,  
sic quinto saeculo Angli Saxonesque totam insulam vasta-  
verunt.

27. [Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Form Passive Adjectives from the following  
Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

accūsō [accusation]

illustrō [illustration]

exportō [exportation]

parō [pre-paration]

servō [pre-servation]

creō [creation]

deleō [deletion]

moveō [motion]

teneō [re-tention]

videō [vision]

habeō [habit]

pro-hibeō [pro-hibition]

Give the Latin for—

The church had been built by the Christians.

The castle has been destroyed by the Saxons.

A conversation will have been held between us.

The castle was destroyed in the third or fourth century A.D.

The missionaries were not forbidden to land their ship.

Water was provided by the keeper of the castle.

Give the Latin for 'I have been accused by you' and 'you  
have been accused by me,' according as the person speaking and  
the person spoken to are (1) men, (2) women. What is the Latin

for 'I had been praised by my schoolmaster' (said by a boy), 'I shall have been praised by my schoolmistress' (said by a girl)?

(B) The villa, of which you have not-yet seen the remains in the Isle of Wight, was built by the Romans. It was burned by the Angles and Saxons in the fifth century A.D. When was Richborough Castle destroyed? Nothing is known about the time when this very-fine castle was destroyed. Perhaps the Saxons destroyed it.

(C) But if a conversation was held between the King of Kent and St. Augustine through the windows of the castle, as is affirmed by some writers, the castle had not been destroyed at the<sup>1</sup> time when St. Augustine with his forty attendants sailed from the Gallic port to Britain. The castle had been built two or three centuries<sup>2</sup> before.

28. [Fifth Declension.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Decline the Latin for 'a beautiful face,' 'that day,' 'this hope (*spēs*, 5th Decl.),' in all Cases of the Singular and Plural.

(B) Gregory had been moved with pity on-account-of the very-beautiful faces of the boys whom he had seen in the forum. The boys with the beautiful faces were captives. He declared that the boys had<sup>3</sup> the faces of angels. "They ought to be Christians,"<sup>4</sup> said he; "for now they have no hope<sup>5</sup> of a better life." From that day Gregory was desirous of teaching<sup>6</sup> the knowledge of the true God in England.

29. [5th Declension—continued.]

That jolly day on which<sup>7</sup> we saw Richborough Castle was the

<sup>1</sup> Say 'at that (*eō*) time, when.'

<sup>2</sup> What Case? See Preparations, § 20, l. 15. The Abl. of *duo* is *duobus*, and that of *tria* is *tribus*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'he declared the boys to have.'

<sup>4</sup> Say 'it behoves them to be Christians,' and make 'Christians' agree in Case with 'them.'

<sup>5</sup> 'Hope' is *spēs*, 5th Declension.

<sup>6</sup> Form a Noun in *-ndum* from the Verb *doceō*; and remember that the vowel of the 2nd Declension is *e* where the 1st Declension has *a*.

<sup>7</sup> Notice the different Prepositions used in English to express 'Time when'; 'on this day,' 'in this year (or month or century),' 'at this hour.'

sixteenth day of the month of September. Within seven days the end of the holidays will have arrived. There will have been fifty-four<sup>1</sup> days from the beginning of the holidays. On the twenty-third<sup>2</sup> day of the month of September I shall be in-the-house-of my schoolmaster. On the next day there will be the beginning of lessons.

\* 30. *Conversation.*

Quae sunt res quibus pueri maxime delectantur ?

Feriae, vel inter scholas dies feriati.

Quibus rebus per ferias vel per dies feriatos plerumque operam dant ?

Ludis pilarum.

Quae sunt genera diversa pilarum ?

Unum est genus follium, alterum trigonum ; tertium est genus earum quae lingua Latina nominari non possunt.

Cur lingua Anglica nominari possunt, lingua Latina non possunt ?

Quia res ipsa Romanis non nota fuit.

Qua ex his rebus tu ipse maxime delectaris ?

Nihil melius est quam follis.

Sed his rebus tum quoque operam das cum apud magistrum tuum es. Nonne verum est ? Responde mihi.

Verum est ; sed nonnullis diebus scholae sunt a mane usque ad vesperum.

31. *A Portrait of Boadicea.*

Dio Cassius, the historian,<sup>3</sup> declares Boadicea to have been a woman of <sup>4</sup> great stature, with a warlike face, blue eyes, and <sup>5</sup> long and yellow hair. She had <sup>6</sup> an embroidered <sup>7</sup> tunic, over which there was a cloak. In her hand she held a spear. Thus she stood in her chariot, riding among the ranks of her Britons. See the picture which stands on the 11th page of this book.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'four and fifty.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'third and twentieth.'

<sup>3</sup> Say 'the writer of things.'

<sup>4</sup> Use the 'Ablative Case.'

<sup>5</sup> Omit this 'and' in translating.

<sup>6</sup> Use the Past Imperfect tense for this and all the other Past tenses which follow in this exercise.

<sup>7</sup> For this and other new words in this exercise, see the English-Latin Vocabulary.

It is not strange <sup>1</sup> that the Britons loved and feared their queen. The name Boudicca itself signified in <sup>2</sup> the Celtic tongue nothing else than Victoria.<sup>3</sup>

*A Grammatical Lesson in Latin.*

Quot sunt declinationes nominum Latinorum? Latine mihi responde.

Quinque sunt declinationes, prima, secunda, tertia, quarta, quinta.

Quot coniugationes verborum Latinorum tibi notae sunt?

Duae coniugationes, prima et secunda.

Suntne aliae coniugationes verborum?

Aliae sunt coniugationes, sed non aliae declinationes.

Recte: cuius declinationis est nomen *miles*?

Tertiae declinationis.

Recte. Declina mihi hoc nomen in Numero Singulari.

*Miles, militem, militis, militi, cum milite.*

Recte. Quae sunt terminationes duarum illarum coniugationum?

Terminationes primae Personae Numeri Singularis sunt *o* et *eo*.

Optime respondisti. Coniuga mihi tempus Praesens verbi *video*.

*Video, vides, videt, videmus, videtis, vident.*

Tempus Praeteritum-imperfectum coniuga.

*Videram, videras* —

Non recte. In omnibus coniugationibus tempora Praeterita-imperfecta terminationes *bam, bas, bat* habent.

*Videbam, videbas, videbat, cetera.*

Recte: cur terminationes *eram, eras* dedisti?

Fortasse quia verbum *sum* in tempore Praeterito-imperfecto *eram, eras, erat* habet.

Quae sunt nomina aliorum temporum?

Futurum, Perfectum?

Recte; et Plusquamperfectum et Perfectum Futuri.

32. [3rd Conjugation—Present Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I often write letters in the morning,'  
in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi, et

<sup>1</sup> Say 'a strange-thing,' cp. § 6, l. 13; § 7, l. 9; for 'that' see § 23, l. 18; § 31, l. 14.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Ablative without a Preposition.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 24, ll. 18-20.

'I am sometimes sent to Richborough,'  
in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

•(B) "Why do you not admit the Outlanders to the citizenship?" So our Minister writes. The Boers answer thus: "We do not admit them because they will not be loyal<sup>1</sup> citizens of our Republic. We are not able to admit a multitude of new citizens into our Republic." The Boers say that the Outlanders are too many.<sup>2</sup> In the African Republic, which is situated across the River Vaal, the number of the Boers is smaller than of the Outlanders.

33. [3rd Conjugation—Past Imperfect Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Praeterito-Imperfecto pro Praesenti.

(B) The Romans used-to-admit foreigners to the citizenship. In the first century B.C. there was a Spaniard, to whom Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, a very-famous Roman general, gave the Roman citizenship. After that time he was called Lucius Cornelius Balbus. While Caesar was-leading<sup>3</sup> his forces against the Celtic and Germanic tribes which inhabited<sup>4</sup> Gaul, Balbus was with him. Balbus used-to-write letters for<sup>5</sup> Caesar about public affairs.<sup>6</sup> These letters used-to-be-sent to Cicero and other very-distinguished men.

34. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect—continued.]

(A) The names Gaius and Balbus are very-famous; for they stand in a book which used-to-be-read by all English boys. The book says that Gaius and Balbus built a wall.<sup>7</sup> But who was Gaius, and who was Balbus? Lucius Cornelius Balbus was a friend of Gaius Julius Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'faithful' (*fīdus, a, um*).

<sup>2</sup> Use the Accusative with the Infinitive ('the Outlanders to be too many'), just as if 'declare' had been used instead of 'say' (*dīcō*); and make 'many' agree with 'the Outlanders.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *dūcō* (3rd Conjugation).

<sup>4</sup> Use *incolō* (3rd Conjugation).

<sup>5</sup> 'For' here means 'instead of'; therefore translate it by *prō* (with the Ablative).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'about the Republic.'

<sup>7</sup> Say 'Gaius and Balbus (Accus.) to have built (Perfect Infin.) a wall.'

(B) But this Balbus and this Gaius never built a wall, as is said in the very-famous book which we have mentioned. And Balbus is a surname; but Gaius is a fore-name. The Romans used-not-to-say "Balbus and Gaius built a wall," just as we<sup>1</sup> in the English language do not say "John<sup>2</sup> and Jones<sup>2</sup> built a wall."

35. [3rd Conjugation—Present and Past Imperfect, continued.]

(A) In the times of Caesar the Rhine used-to-divide Gaul from Germany. Read the first chapter of the first book of the Gallic War, where Caesar says this.<sup>3</sup> He also says this:<sup>3</sup> "The Germans inhabit the lands which lie across the Rhine." The region which used-to-be-inhabited by the Belgae was a part of Gaul. For Gaul used-to-be-divided into three parts, of which one used-to-be-called Belgium.

(B) But even<sup>4</sup> before the times of Caesar many German tribes used-to-inhabit lands which lay across the Rhine. Caesar himself says that<sup>5</sup> German tribes had migrated across the Rhine. Thus<sup>6</sup> in very-ancient times a part of Gaul used-to-be-inhabited by Germans. The Belgians themselves were-said<sup>7</sup> to be of Germanic origin.

(C) At-the-present-day the Rhine does not divide France from Germany; for some of the provinces which lie across the Rhine are part of Germany. In the year 1870<sup>8</sup> there-was a war between the French and the Germans about this matter.<sup>9</sup> Before the war the French used-to-say that these provinces were theirs;<sup>10</sup> and in-fact<sup>11</sup> the people<sup>12</sup> by whom these provinces were-inhabited were mostly French.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic in the English.

<sup>2</sup> Use the English names, as they stand.

<sup>3</sup> Use the Neuter Singular ('this-thing').

<sup>4</sup> Say 'already.'

<sup>5</sup> Use the Accusative with Infinitive. So in all future passages where the English has 'that' depending on the verb 'to say.'

<sup>6</sup> Use *itaque*.

<sup>7</sup> Use the Past Imperfect tense.

<sup>8</sup> Say 'in the year thousandth eight-hundredth seventieth'; cp.

§ 25, l. 8.

<sup>9</sup> Use *rēs* for 'matter.'

<sup>10</sup> Use *suus*, *a*, *um*, and make it agree with 'provinces.'

<sup>11</sup> *rē vērā*.

<sup>12</sup> Say 'men' (*hominēs*).



36. [3rd Conjugation, Future Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine sententias Exercitii 32 (A) cum tempore Futuro pro Praesenti.

(B) I shall like to read the letters which my father or my mother will send me<sup>1</sup> from South Africa, if there is<sup>2</sup> war. Will my father himself serve against the enemy? If my father is sent<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup> Natal, or into the Dutch Republics of South Africa, for the sake of fighting, my mother will write to me.

(C) The British forces will not be driven into the sea by the Boers, even if they are fewer in number than the enemy. They will defend our Colonies. If the Boers overrun<sup>2</sup> Natal, as our master says, greater forces will be sent from Britain. If these do<sup>2</sup> not conquer the enemy, we shall enroll other forces. Some day, perhaps, the letters which will be sent me<sup>1</sup> about this war will be read by other boys.

(C) *Conversation*.

Quid mihi de Republica Africana Batavorum dicere potes?  
Respublica Africana Batavorum trans Vahalem flumen sita est.  
Cur illam partem Africae Meridianae incolunt coloni illi Batavi?  
Coloni Batavi, qui Rempubicam Africanam nunc incolunt,  
Coloniam nostram Anglicam in Africa Meridiana sitam quondam incolebant.

Cur ex Colonia nostra Africana migraverunt?  
Quia magna discordia fuit inter nos et colonos Batavos.  
Unde nata est illa discordia?

Haeret aqua.

Ego tibi dicam: ex manumissione servorum nata est. Sed unde nata est discordia quae nunc est inter nos et illos?

Ex peregrinis illis nata est, qui Rempubicam Africanam incolunt.  
Quid est nomen urbi quam peregrini incolunt?

Nomen ei urbi est *Johannesburg*.

Ita est; Urbs Aurea interdum vocatur, quia multum auri sub solo est.

Quid est nomen Ministro nostro qui Coloniis praeest?  
Cognomen ei est *Chamberlain*: praenomen ei est Iosepho.

Nonne cognomen illud Latine reddere potes?

Non possum.

<sup>1</sup> Say 'to me' (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).

<sup>2</sup> Use the Future tense.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'into.'

Forma Latina illius cognominis Camerarius est; nam saeculo sexto decimo post Christum natum vir doctus<sup>1</sup>, fuit cui nomen Latinum erat Camerario, atque parentibus eius nomen fuerat quod lingua Germanica nihil aliud significabat, quam *Chamberlain*.

37. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed with s.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I have written a letter,'

'I had said something new,'

'I shall not have declared war,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) *A Letter from Antony to his Mother.*

MY DEAREST MOTHER,<sup>2</sup>

I hope you are quite well.<sup>3</sup> My uncle has written me<sup>4</sup> a letter in which he says strange things. "The African Republics," he says,<sup>5</sup> "have declared war upon us." Please<sup>6</sup> write to me soon, unless you have already written. Have the Boers sent an army against our Colony? Will my father serve against the enemy? Perhaps before the arrival of this letter we shall have led our forces against the enemy. I write on the 12th day of the month of October. Farewell.

38. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect Stems Active, formed without any suffix.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I have read the letter,'

'I had defended the land,'

'I shall have conquered the enemy,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

<sup>1</sup> Joachim Camerarius; the name of his family had once been *Kammermeister*, which means 'chamberlain.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'Antony sends greeting to his dearest mother.'

<sup>3</sup> This may be translated literally ('I hope you to be well'), or the beginning of the letter in § 37 may be imitated.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'to me' (either the Dative or *ad* with the Accusative).

<sup>5</sup> Use *inquit*.

<sup>6</sup> Use *amābō tē* (lit. 'I shall love you'), and put it after 'write,' as in O.M. § 21, *monstrā nōbis, amābō tē*.

(B) My mother wrote to me on the 11th day of the month of October. She told<sup>1</sup> me that the Dutch Republics of South Africa had declared war upon us. How glad I was to read<sup>2</sup> the letter which my father sent after the victories of our forces! You, most-brave Irish battalions, ascended Talana Hill and defeated<sup>3</sup> the enemy. And you, English and Scottish battalions charged most-bravely at Elandslaagte.<sup>4</sup> The Boers have not yet driven the Britons into the sea.

39. [3rd Conjugation—Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Form Passive Adjectives from the following Verbs, using the English words in brackets as a guide :—

scribō [pre-scription]	mittō [mission]
con-scribō [conscription]	agō [action]
re-dūcō [re-duction]	dēfendō [defence, defensive]
col-ligō [col-lection]	vincō [victory]

Give all the Persons of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of *dūcō*, *mittō* and *vincō*; and the 3rd Persons Sing. and Plur. of the same tenses of *scribō*.

(B) Three letters have been sent to me from South Africa about the war. Of these letters, two<sup>5</sup> have been written-out by me into my note-book. Three battles have been fought.<sup>6</sup> In two<sup>5</sup> of these battles the Boers have been defeated; but in one battle we<sup>7</sup> have been defeated. Nevertheless the British flag has been bravely defended. New forces have already been enrolled. They will soon have been sent to<sup>8</sup> South Africa. The forces of the enemy have been collected around Ladysmith.

40. [4th Conjugation—Present tense, Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oral Drill.*—Dic Latine—

- 'I am guarding the camp,'  
'I am coming to the camp,'

<sup>1</sup> Use *dicō* for 'tell.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'How gladly I read' (Perfect tense).

<sup>3</sup> Use *vincō* here and in all future exercises for 'defeat.'

<sup>4</sup> Imitate § 38, ll. 13, 14.

<sup>5</sup> What Gender? ('two' = 'two letters'). For declension of *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, see Latin-English Vocabulary.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'engaged-in' (Pass. of *committō*).

<sup>7</sup> Use the Pronoun in Latin, because 'we' is emphatic.

<sup>8</sup> *in* with the Accusative.

in omnibus personis Praesentis Activi; et  
 'I am being guarded by our soldiers,'  
 in omnibus personis Praesentis Passivi.

B. I hear that<sup>1</sup> our men are-guarding Ladysmith, and that<sup>2</sup> the Boers are besieging the town. Ladysmith is not a fortified<sup>3</sup> town; it has no walls. Accordingly it will not be easy to guard the place. But a very-great store<sup>4</sup> of arms and of food is kept<sup>5</sup> in the town. "Do you hear," says our master, "that the Boers have placed<sup>6</sup> their biggest guns on all the hills by which Ladysmith is surrounded?" But new forces are-coming from Britain.

41. [4th Conjugation—Past Imperfect and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I was guarding the camp,'

'I shall guard the camp,'

'I was being guarded by our soldiers,'

'I shall be guarded by our soldiers,'

in omnibus personis temporum Praeteriti-imperfecti et Futuri; et

'I shall arrive home (*domum*),'

in omnibus personis temporis Futuri; et

'I know that<sup>6</sup> there is danger of war.'

in omnibus personis temporis Praesentis.

(B) In the times of Boadicea, Colchester was not a fortified town. The Roman veterans who were-guarding the place did not know that<sup>6</sup> there was danger of a British rebellion. "The Britons," they said, "will never come for the sake of attacking Colchester." But the Britons were-coming with a very-great army. Why were we not fortifying Ladysmith before the war?

<sup>1</sup> 'I hear that . . .' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as 'I say (or declare) that . . .'

<sup>2</sup> Use the Passive Adjective *munitus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>3</sup> Use *copia*; for 'very-great' see § 20, l. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Use *custodiō*.

<sup>5</sup> Form the Perfect Infinitive by adding *-isse* to the Perfect Stem Active of *pōnō*; cp. § 40, l. 12.

<sup>6</sup> 'I know that . . .' is expressed in Latin by the same construction as 'I say (or declare) that' and 'I hear that.' In English, too, we may say 'I know him to be a friend,' as well as 'I know that he is a friend.'

When will our new forces arrive<sup>1</sup> in South Africa? We shall soon know.

42. [4th Conjugation—Perfect Stem Active.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I have heard my country's call' (imitate § 42, l. 10),

'I have arrived home (*domum*),'

'I came, I saw, I conquered,'

in omnibus personis temporis Perfecti.

(B) Have you heard the very-famous song about the fifty thousand horse and foot<sup>2</sup> who are sailing to the Cape of Good Hope? "The British soldier," it says,<sup>3</sup> "has heard his country's call." I have heard and I have sung this song. We have also heard the song about the Soldiers of the Queen. Some of these men have already arrived in South Africa. At the<sup>4</sup> time when they sailed from our southern port they had not heard the news about Ladysmith. When they have arrived<sup>5</sup> at the Cape of Good Hope, they will be sent to<sup>6</sup> Natal.

(B) Conversation. (The first speaker is the pupil.)

Num quid novi hodie ex Africa Meridiana audivisti?

Nihil novi audiivi. Nostri Castra Mariana ut possunt custodiunt;  
sed post proelium illud quod die tricesimo mensis Octobris  
pugnatum est nihil novi est.

Quot sunt nostri qui ibi obsidentur?

Nescio: sed audio eos circiter duodecim milia esse numero.

Quot sunt Batavi qui eos obsident?

Nemo scit; sed numero nostros multum superant.

Sed tum cum quinquaginta illa milia virorum, quos nuper emisimus, in Africam Meridianam advenerint, numero nos non superabunt, ut spero.

Nescio; nam Batavi sexaginta milia virorum habere dicuntur.

<sup>1</sup> Use *ad-veniō*; and for 'in' say 'into,' as in § 41, l. 10. Note that *ad-veniō* takes the same construction as *veniō*: the Romans spoke of arriving *to* a place, not of arriving *at* it.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'of cavalry and infantry forces,' and make 'who' agree in Gender with 'forces.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *inquil*.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'at that (*eō*) time, when.'

<sup>5</sup> Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect tense).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'into.'

Quot sunt viri in illa cohorte quae heri ad Promunturium Spei Bonae advenit?

Circa octingenti sunt numero.

Quando ceterae cohortes advenient?

Intra hunc mensem, ut speramus. Sed non statim cum Batavis pugnabitur; nam ducenta fere milia passuum sunt inter Portum Natalem et Castra Mariana. Atque cum exercitus contra hostem mittitur, non universi milites pugnando operam dant; maximae parti eorum necesse est vias custodire, castella munire, pontes defendere, ceteris rebus operam dare.

43. [Verbs in *id* with Infinitive in *ere*—Present, Past Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive.]

(A) *Oval Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I desire to take the camp,'

'I desired to take the camp,'

'I shall desire to arrive home,'

in omnibus personis temporum Praesentis, Praeteriti-imperfecti, Futuri Activi.

Redde Latine—'What are you doing?' 'What were you doing?' 'What will you do?' 'Many letters are (were, will be) received by me every-day.'

(B) *A Letter from Antony to his father.*

MY DEAREST FATHER,<sup>1</sup>

The letter which you wrote on November 5th<sup>2</sup> arrived yesterday. I feel<sup>3</sup> very-great grief on-account-of the reverse of<sup>4</sup> which you speak. We read in the newspapers that<sup>5</sup> the Boers greatly desire to take Ladysmith. When shall I receive another<sup>6</sup> letter from you? I desire to hear more<sup>7</sup> about Ladysmith. What are you yourself doing? What will you and my mother

<sup>1</sup> Say 'Antony to his dearest father greeting.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'on the Nones of November.'

<sup>3</sup> Use *capio*, as in § 43, l. 9.

<sup>4</sup> 'of' here means 'about.'

<sup>5</sup> 'I read that . . . ' is expressed like 'I say that,' 'I hear that,' 'I know that.' This sentence, then, will have two Infinitives in it, the second depending on the first.

<sup>6</sup> Use *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.

<sup>7</sup> Say 'more things' (*plura*), cp. § 32, l. 12.

do, if the Boers overrun<sup>1</sup> our Colony? I write this letter on the 24th of November. Farewell.

44. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—Perfect Stems.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'I have received a letter from (*ex*) South Africa,'

'I have made an attack on (*in*) the enemy (Accus.),'

'I had put (*conīceram*) the enemy to flight,'

'I shall have dug a pit,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B) We had received the news about the siege of Kimberley and of Mafeking in the month of October. The Boers began to besiege Mafeking on the 13th of October. A few days after<sup>2</sup> they had surrounded Kimberley with their forces, and had dug trenches round the town. On October 16th they began to bombard<sup>3</sup> Mafeking. They did not bombard Kimberley before November 8th. Although the Boers have thrown an immense number of missiles into these towns, they have not killed many of our men. On October 27th our men made a very-brave attack upon the Boers who were besieging Mafeking, and took one of the trenches.

45. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

The trenches which the Boers had dug round Mafeking were only a mile distant<sup>4</sup> from the town. And they had brought-up very-big guns for the sake of causing<sup>5</sup> panic to the inhabitants. But the British Colonel who is-in-command-of the town does not fear the Boers. When the Dutchman bade him surrender the town for the sake of avoiding slaughter, he answered, laughing,<sup>6</sup> "Please,<sup>7</sup> when will the slaughter begin?"<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Use the Future Perfect tense.

<sup>2</sup> Imitate § 20, l. 15 (*paucis annis ante*); 'after' will be *post*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'to throw missiles into.'

<sup>4</sup> Imitate § 45, l. 12.

<sup>5</sup> The Nouns in *-ndum* formed from Verbs in *iō* end in *-rendum*; thus *faciendum*, 'the making,' 'the causing.'

<sup>6</sup> The Active Adjectives formed from Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in *-ens*.

<sup>7</sup> Use *quasō*, and put it after the other verb, as in § 32, l. 1.

<sup>8</sup> Use the Passive ('will be begun').

46. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

Afterwards he wrote to the Boers in<sup>1</sup> the following fashion :  
 " This town cannot be taken<sup>2</sup> by sitting-down<sup>3</sup> and looking at it.<sup>4</sup>  
 Why do you not come and take it ? But you cannot. Go<sup>5</sup> home ;  
 therefore, to your farms. You will be sorry some day, if you do  
 not listen<sup>6</sup> to me. For we shall soon have taken the capitals of  
 your Republics." On October 21st he sent this message to our  
 commander-in-chief : " All is well.<sup>7</sup> They have bombarded<sup>8</sup> the  
 town for four hours. We have lost one dog."

47. [Verbs in *iō* with Infinitive in *ere*—continued.]

(A) What is the name of our most merry Colonel ? The first  
 letters of his name are B.P. On holidays,<sup>9</sup> when the Boers do not  
 bombard the town, our men play cricket and football.<sup>10</sup> When  
 the Boers begin to bombard, a signal is given by a bell, and all  
 the inhabitants of the town, men, women and children, retire<sup>11</sup>  
 into pits, which they have dug in the earth. There are only about  
 nine hundred soldiers in the town, which is besieged by about  
 five thousand Boers. Sometimes our men make very-brave  
 attacks upon the Boers and drive them out of their trenches.

(B) *Conversation.* (The first speaker is the pupil.)

Num quid novi est hodie ex Africa Meridiana ?

Nonne audivisti de tertia clade, quam nostri acceperunt ?

Non audiui. Dic mihi, quaeso. Ubi accepta est ?

Hic mensis nobis ater fuit. Non plus quam sex dies sunt ex

quo duae clades nuntiatae sunt ; hodie de tertia et fortasse

maiore clade ex Terra Natali nuntium accepimus. Sed de

hac re non libenter dico. In actis diurnis legere potes.

Num nostri non bene pugnaverunt ?

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 13, ll. 1, 2.

<sup>2</sup> Use *capiō* (Passive Infinitive).

<sup>3</sup> Use the Ablative of the Noun in *-ndum* formed from *sedeō*.

<sup>4</sup> Say 'by looking' (without 'at it'). Similarly in the next sentence omit 'it.'

<sup>5</sup> Say 'betake yourselves' ('yourselves' = *vōs*).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'shall not have listened' (Future Perfect).

<sup>7</sup> Say 'all-things have themselves well' ; cp. § 22, l. 7.

<sup>8</sup> See Ex. 44 (B), note 3.

<sup>9</sup> Use the Ablative of *dies feriātī*, without a Preposition.

<sup>10</sup> Say 'give attention to the ball and the football' ; or 'play (use *lūdō*, 3rd Conj.) with the ball and the football.'

<sup>11</sup> Say 'betake themselves.'



Impetus fortissimos per totum diem in hostes fecerunt; sed frustra. Tugelam non traiecerunt. Plus quam mille viros amisimus.

Magnum capio dolorem.

Nondum omnia audivisti. Batavi decem vel undecim ex tormentis nostris ceperunt.

Quomodo ceperunt?

Fossas in ripis Tugelae foderant, unde imbrem mortiferum missilium in ordines nostros coniecerunt. Itaque tormenta defensoribus nudata sunt.

Nonne nostri tormenta receperunt?

Duo ex tormentis parva manus nostrorum summa virtute recepit; sed cetera non recepimus.

Num Castra Mariana iam obsidione liberari poterunt?

Nescio.

48. [Present Injunctive of *sum*.]

(A) Oral Drill.—Dic Latine—

'May I be victorious (*victor*, Plur. *victōrēs*).

'May I be helpful (*prōsim*) to the republic,'  
in omnibus personis Praesentis Injunctivi.

(B) During the siege the Colonel does not take much sleep.<sup>1</sup>  
In the silence of the night he often walks round the town or in the veldt, for the sake of exploring.<sup>2</sup> He has written these verses—

If we go forward,<sup>3</sup> we die;<sup>4</sup>

If we go backward,<sup>5</sup> we die;

Better go forward and die.<sup>6</sup>

May it be well with<sup>7</sup> you, most-brave Colonel! May it be well with<sup>7</sup> the little town, which you are defending! May you be victorious!<sup>8</sup> May we all be victorious with you!

<sup>1</sup> Say 'much of sleep,' like *aliquid novī*, § 37, l. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Noun in *-ndum* formed from the Verb *explōrō*.

<sup>3</sup> For 'go forward' say 'advance' (*prōcurrō*). Use the Present tense, because 'if' means 'if at any time' or 'whenever.'

<sup>4</sup> Say 'we are killed' (Passive of *interficiō*).

<sup>5</sup> For 'go back' say 'retire' ('take ourselves back': *nōs recipimus*).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'It is better to advance and to be killed'; cp. § 18, ll. 14, 15.

<sup>7</sup> Use the Dative Case ('to you' instead of 'with you').

<sup>8</sup> Say 'a conqueror,' 'a victor.'

49. [Present Imperative of the 1st Conjugation.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'May I save (*salvum praestem*) the army,'

'Let me not (*nē*) fear,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Imperativi.

(B) May our army soon raise the siege of Mafeking<sup>1</sup> and Kimberley and Ladysmith! May the brave defenders of these towns endure the siege until help arrives!<sup>2</sup> Let us not fear! Let us await the victory of our men with a calm mind! And in distant lands, where Britannia's sons have founded great colonies, let all men with one voice exclaim, "Rule Britannia!"<sup>3</sup> Long may our Empire stand! Long may our Queen reign!"

50. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I am marching (*iter facio*) in order that I may save the town,'

'I shall try (*operam dabo*) to storm the town,'

'I am letting-out the gas, in-such-a-way (*ita*) that the balloon may be brought-to-land,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in tertia sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi dici potest.

(B) A British army is marching in-order-that Kimberley may be saved.<sup>4</sup> And another British army is fighting on<sup>5</sup> the Tugela in-order-that the siege of Ladysmith may be raised.<sup>6</sup> The Dutch general who is besieging Kimberley says "Surrender the town, in order that the slaughter of women and children may be avoided." But our Colonel, who is defending the town, says "Come and take it,"<sup>7</sup> if you can." The Dutch general, however, is not trying to<sup>8</sup> storm the town. His plan is to starve out the inhabitants.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Say 'free Mafeking from siege,' as in § 44, l. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'shall have arrived' (Future Perfect of *adveniō*).

<sup>3</sup> Say 'let Britannia be mistress of the waves.'

<sup>4</sup> Use *salvus*, *a*, *um* for 'saved.'

<sup>5</sup> Use *ad* with the Accusative.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'in-order-that Ladysmith may-be freed from siege.'

<sup>7</sup> Use the Imperative for 'come' and 'take'; and omit 'it.'

<sup>8</sup> Use *operam dō ut*, as in § 50, ll. 3 and 4.

<sup>9</sup> Say 'to conquer (Infinitive) the inhabitants by want.'

51. [Present Subjunctive of *sum* and 1st Conjugation—continued.]

(A) Meanwhile our men who are defending Kimberley are manufacturing a cannon in-order-that they may be able<sup>1</sup> to throw missiles against the big cannons of the Boers. Food is so dear that eggs cost twenty-five shillings a dozen,<sup>2</sup> and a fowl costs twenty shillings. So great is the want that the inhabitants are living on horse-flesh. Sometimes they climb-up onto<sup>3</sup> towers or other high buildings of the town in order that they may watch<sup>4</sup> the veldt. For they hope that help is-at-hand.<sup>5</sup> Sometimes they see a cloud-of-dust, sometimes the balloon of a British army.

(B) *Conversation.* (The speakers are two boys—Antony and Mark.)

Salvus sis, Marce! Legistine de Adamantopoli?

Num obsidione liberata est?

Obsidione liberata est.

Euge, optime! Quis liberavit?

Dux noster cui cognomen est *French*.

Quomodo liberavit?

Nonne scis eum iam multos dies ei rei operam dedisse? Nonne scis eum virum esse qui hostes superet cum ei rei operam det?

Scio.

Is vir vincere scit.

Prosit ei! Opportune accidit quod non obsidetur.

Non obsidetur quia ex oppido ad Tugelam sito se recipere sciebat antequam Batavi obsidionem inceperunt.

Victor sit omnium hostium! Castra Mariana quoque obsidione liberet!

Spero.

Vale.

Vale.

<sup>1</sup> Form the Present Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *sum, sis, sit simus, sitis, sint* to *pos-*.

<sup>2</sup> Say 'that twelve eggs stand at five and twenty shillings'; imitate the construction in § 50, l. 19.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'ascend onto'; cp. § 50, l. 27.

<sup>4</sup> Use *spectō*.

<sup>5</sup> Say 'help to-be-at-hand (*ad-esse*),' as after 'I say,' 'I hear,' etc.

52. [Present Injunctive and Subjunctive of the other Conjugations.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

- 'Let me see-to-it (*videam*) that the army be saved (*salvus*),  
'May I conquer (*vincam*) the enemy,'  
'May I soon hear about a victory,'  
'May I receive news about a victory,'  
'May I be there to see,'

in omnibus personis Praesentis Iniunctivi.

(B) May our commander-in-chief conquer the enemy! May he capture<sup>1</sup> their whole army! He is sending-out men who shall-make<sup>2</sup> an attack on them from the North, and others who shall block their way<sup>3</sup> from the East. He himself is coming with a very-large army, in order that they may not<sup>4</sup> march to the South. Let the Boers see-to-it that they be not captured! May Majuba day be lucky<sup>5</sup> for us this year!<sup>6</sup> May we soon hear about a victory, and rejoice! May Ladysmith never be taken!

53. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *sum*.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

- 'I dug a trench in order that I might be safe (*vītus*),'  
'I sent-out forces in order that I might be able to surround the enemy,'  
'I was marching in order that the town might be safe,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum Indicativi et Subiunctivi, nisi quod in ultima sententia una tantum persona Subiunctivi dici potest.

(B) Our commander-in-chief had sent-out a body of horsemen in order that Kimberley might be saved.<sup>7</sup> The inhabitants had endured the siege so long that food was very-dear. But they had endured want most-bravely in-order-that the name of Kimberley might be great and famous. On December roth a British army was only twenty miles away from the town, so that the inhabitants were-able<sup>8</sup> to see the balloon. But on De-

<sup>1</sup> Use *capio*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *facio*.

<sup>3</sup> Say 'who shall prevent them from-the-march,' as in § 52, l. 8.

<sup>4</sup> For 'in order that . . . not' say 'lest' (*nē*).

<sup>5</sup> Say 'white.'

<sup>6</sup> Time when.

<sup>7</sup> Use *salvus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>8</sup> Form the Past Imperfect Subjunctive of *pos-sum* by adding *-sem*, *-sēs*, *-set*, *-sēmus*, *-sētis*, *-sent* to *hac*—

cember 11th the army suffered<sup>1</sup> a great reverse, so that it was necessary to retire<sup>2</sup> to the Modder River.

54. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conj.]

(A) *Oral Drill*.—Dic Latine—

'I sent-out forces in order that I might raise the siege of the town,'

'I crossed the river in order that I might dislodge (*locō movērem*) the enemy,'

'I was trying (*operam dabam*) to conquer the enemy,'

'I had resolved to take the town,'

'I marched in order that I might guard the town,'

in omnibus personis horum temporum.

(B). While one of our generals was fighting on the Modder River in order to surround the Boers as<sup>3</sup> with a net, the other<sup>4</sup> was trying most-bravely to raise the siege of Ladysmith. He had fought three great battles with the Boers in order to drive them from the hills which lie to the north of the River Tugela. And although he had not fought successfully, he had resolved to lead<sup>5</sup> his men to the besieged town. The Boers were fighting in order that they might block his way.<sup>6</sup> But our men very-cheerfully<sup>7</sup> endured toil and death in order that Ladysmith might not<sup>8</sup> be taken.

55. [Past Imperfect Subjunctive, continued.]

(A) The Boers, too, had tried for four months to take Ladysmith. On January 6th they made a great attack in order to take the town by storm.<sup>9</sup> But the brave men who were defending Caesar's Camp compelled them to retire.<sup>10</sup> On December 8th six hundred of our men performed an act of great gallantry.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Say 'received.'

<sup>2</sup> Say 'to take themselves back.'

<sup>3</sup> *velut*; cp. § 53, l. 8.

<sup>4</sup> *alter*; cp. § 54, l. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Either say 'that he should lead,' as in § 54, ll. 21, 22, or use the Infinitive.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'might prevent him from the march,' as in § 52, l. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Say 'with most-cheerful mind,' as in § 54, l. 12.

<sup>8</sup> For 'in order that . . . not' use *nē* ('lest'), as in § 53, l. 8.

<sup>9</sup> Use *expugnō* for 'to take by storm.'

<sup>10</sup> Say 'that they should take themselves back.'

<sup>11</sup> Imitate § 48, l. 9.

They marched out of the town by night in order to destroy one of the biggest guns of the Boers. Under the light of the moon, and with naked feet, they ascended the hill on which the gun stood. Suddenly the air trembles with fire and thunder.<sup>1</sup> The gun is nowhere seen,<sup>2</sup> for it has tumbled into the pit which the Boers had dug. Only one of our men was wounded on that night.

(B) Conversation.

*Marcus.* Salvus sis, Antoni! Audivistine de Castris Marianis obsidione liberatis?

*Antonius.* Salvus sum, Marce; nam audiui. Omnes pueri audiverunt. Sed ecce Alexander ad nos currit.

*Alexander.* Audivistisne, Marce et Antoni, Castra Mariana obsidione liberata esse?

*M. et Ant.* Audivimus.

*Alex.* Magister classis tertiæ mihi dixit et imperavit ut vobis dicerem.

*Marc.* Non necesse erat ut imperaret.

*Alex.* Nonne dies feriatus nobis dabitur quo liberi simus scholis?

*Marc.* Dari oportet.

*Alex.* Nonne tota schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur? Quid dicis?

*Ant.* Fortasse. Sed ecce magister classis quartæ ad nos venit. Salve, magister! Num schola hac nocte ignibus festis illustrabitur? Alexander scire cupit.

*Mag.* Nescio. Castra Mariana per quattuor menses ignibus illustrata sunt, sed non festis.

*Alex.* Nunc festis illustrabuntur. Sed quis ea obsidione liberavit?

*Mag.* Fabius ille noster qui—

Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem.

*Ant.* Quomodo liberavit?

*Mag.* Consilium cepit ut Tugelam ab oriente traiceret et impetum in collem Petreium faceret. Atque rem tam bene gessit ut heri manus equitum nostrorum in oppidum equitare posset. Tum finis obsidioni factus est. Nam Batavi se in fugam coniecerunt cum tormentis, vehiculis, ceteris.

*Alex.* Floreant Castra Mariana!

*Ant.* Vivat Buller!

*Marc.* Vivat Robertus noster, qui—

Unus homo nobis properando restituit rem.

<sup>1</sup> Imitate § 46, l. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Use *conspiciō*.

## 56. [Injunctive and Imperative.]

God save<sup>1</sup> our gracious<sup>2</sup> Queen,Long live<sup>1</sup> our noble<sup>3</sup> Queen,

God save the Queen.

Send<sup>4</sup> her victorious,<sup>5</sup>

Happy and glorious,

Long to reign<sup>6</sup> over us :

God save the Queen.

Thy choicest gifts in store<sup>7</sup>On her be pleased to pour,<sup>8</sup>Long may she reign.<sup>9</sup>

May she defend our laws,

And ever give us cause<sup>10</sup>To cry with loud applause<sup>11</sup>

God save the Queen.

<sup>1</sup> Use the Injunctive; cp. § 49, l. 30. [For 'live' in l. 2 use *vivō*, 3rd Conj.]

<sup>2</sup> Use *benignus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>3</sup> Use *optimus*, *a*, *um*.

<sup>4</sup> Use the Imperative or Injunctive of *reddō* ('render').

<sup>5</sup> Use *victrix* (*victric-*).

<sup>6</sup> Say 'in order that she may long reign (*imperiō*) over-us (Dat.).'

<sup>7</sup> Say 'thy best gifts,' using *dōnum* (2nd Decl., neuter, for 'gift'; and leave out 'in store.'

<sup>8</sup> Say 'mayest thou give to her.'

<sup>9</sup> Use *regnō*.

<sup>10</sup> Say 'and may she always so (*ita*) reign.'

<sup>11</sup> Say 'that we may exclaim with one voice.'

## DOMINE SALVUM FAC REGEM.

(A Latin version of "God save the King," arranged for singing.)

Vivat Rex optimus!  
 Fac nobis, o Deus,  
     Regem salvum.  
 Illi sit gloria,  
 Laus et victoria;  
 Tu semper sospita  
     Regem nostrum.

Exurgas, o Deus,  
 Hostes ut dissipes,  
     Et pessum des.  
 Vindex sis fraudium  
 Tu nobis omnium;  
 Spem nostram, Te Deum,  
     Imploramus.

Tu Regi munera  
 Da quae sint optima;  
     Late regnet.  
 Leges defendito,  
 Ut semper gaudio  
 Cantemus publico,  
     Salvus sit Rex.

---

\* The metre of this Latin version is the same as that of the original: and its quantities correspond to those of the musical notes of the familiar tune.

The following words, which have not appeared in the text of *Pro Patria*, are used:

Vivere, *to live*; fac, imperative of *aciō*; sospitāre, *to preserve, protect*; exurgere, *to arise*; dissipāre, *to scatter*; pessum dare, *to make to fall* (lit. *to send to the bottom*); vindex, *avenger*; fraus (fraud-), *fraud, injury*; mūnus (mūner-), *gift*; lex (lēg-), *law*; defenditō, a form of the imperative of *dēfendō*; publicus, a, um, *public*.



# ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY

## I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

The words printed in ordinary type are words which have occurred in *Ora Maritima* and which will therefore be familiar to pupils who have used that book. The words printed in **black type** are the new words which occur in this book. The references put after each word (whether printed in black type or not) are references to those sections of the present book (*Pro Patria*) in which the word or meaning occurs for the first time. These references will be found useful in recovering the meanings of words which have been forgotten. A second reference is given in some cases for special reasons. Words with no reference given are words that occur only in the *conversations* or in maps or pictures. English words in square brackets [and ordinary type] are words etymologically connected with the Latin words *but not intended as translations* of them. The Principal Parts given in the case of verbs are the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present and Perfect tenses and the Passive Participle (Adjective) where it exists.

\* Words of the third declension have the stem inserted in brackets, except where it is the same as the Nom. Sing. (e.g. *arbor*). To words like *navis* the Gen. Plur. is given. Genders are given where irregular according to the rules given in *Ora Maritima*, p. 75 and p. 129 (m.=masculine, f.=feminine, n.=neuter).

The figures 1, 2, 3 denote the declension or conjugation: 'pl.' or 'plur.' denotes plural.

### A

A.S.—Annō Salūtis, in the year of  
grace, § 56

ab or ā (with Abl.) from, § 2; by,  
§ 16; ab oriente, from the  
east, on the east; ab occidente,  
from the west, on the west,  
§ 51; compare § 52, ll. 7, 8

abhinc, adv. ago, § 25

ab-sum ab-esse, ā-fui, I am dis-  
tant, I am absent, § 7

ae-cidit, 3, -cidit, it happens, § 30

ae-cipiō, 3, -epī, -ceptus, a, um, I  
receive, § 43

accūsō, 1, I accuse, § 27

ācer, ācris, ācre, 3, keen, § 4;

ācerimus, a, um, very keen,  
§ 33; ācerimē, very keenly, § 44

acta diurna, 2, plur., the news-  
papers, § 40

actus, a, um, driven, § 39; see agō

ad (with Acc.), to, § 2; for, § 9,  
§ 17; towards, § 39; at or near,  
§ 38

Adamanto-polis, 3, (Acc. -polim,  
Abl. -poli), Kimberley, § 43  
[the diamond city, from 'ada-  
mas,' adamant, diamond,  
§ 51]

adhūc, *hitherto*, § 8; *still*, § 10  
 admirābilis, 3, adj., *admirable*, § 56  
 admiratiō (-iōn-), 3, *admiration*, § 6  
 ad-mittō, 3, mīsi, -missus, a, um, *I admit* (lit. let go to), § 32  
 ad-ōrō, 1, *I pray to, adore, worship*, § 7  
 ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui, *I am present*, § 1; *I am here*, § 12  
 adulescentulus, 2, *young man*, § 17  
 ad-veniō, 4, -vēni, *I arrive, come to*, § 41  
 adventō, 1, *I arrive*, § 16; *I draw near*, § 28  
 adventus, 4, *arrival, advent*, § 27  
 adversus, a, um, *adverse*, § 49  
 aedificium, 2, *building* [edifice], § 1  
 aedificō, 1, *I build*, § 16  
 Aedilbertus, 2, *Eitelbert*, § 25  
 aegrōtō, 1, *I fall sick*, § 20  
 aequus, a, um, *even, calm, equal*, § 54  
 aēr (aer-), 3, m., *air*, § 46; *gas*, § 50  
 aërius, a, um, *of the air, aerial*:  
   nāvis aëria, *balloon*, § 50  
 aes (aer-), 3, n., *copper or brass*, § 36  
 aestās (aestāt-), 3, *summer*  
 aetās (-tāt-), 3, *age*, § 4; *old age, time*, § 22  
 affirmō, 1, *I affirm, state, declare*, § 2  
 af-fulgeō, 2, -fulsi, *I shine on, I dawn on*, § 55  
 Āfrica, 1, *Africa*, § 31  
 Afrīcanus, a, um, *African*, § 31;  
   *Africander*, § 35; *levied in Africa*, § 38  
 ager, agr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *field*, § 16  
 agmen (-min-), 3, *column, army on the march*, § 46  
 agō, 3, ēgi, actus, a, um, *I drive*, § 39; *I do*, § 46  
 agricola, 1, *farmer*, § 33  
 Agricola (Iūlius), *a governor of Britain*, § 1

alacer, alacris, alacre, 3, *eager*, § 1  
 Alexander, Alexandr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *Alexander*, § 1  
 aliquandō, *some day*, § 8; *at last*, § 18  
 aliquis (m., f.), aliquid (n.), *some one, something*, § 1, § 37  
 alius, alia, aliud, *other* [Gen. Sing. alius, Dat. Sing. alii], § 4;  
   alius, . . . alius, *the one . . . the other*, § 46  
 allelūia, hallelūah, § 27  
 altē, adv., *deep, high*, § 22  
 alter, altera, alterum, *another, a second*, § 11 (Gen. Sing. alterius, Dat. Sing. alteri)  
 altitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *height, altitude*, § 22  
 altus, a, um, *high, lofty* [altitude], § 22; *deep*, § 23  
 ambulatiō (-iōn-), 3, *walk*, § 22  
 ambulō, 1, *I walk*, § 1  
 amicus, 2, *friend*, § 1  
 amita, 1, *aunt*, § 18  
 ā-mittō, 3, -mīsi, -missus, a, um, *I lose* (lit. let go away), § 38  
 amō, 1, *I love, like*, § 7  
 amor (amōr-), 3, *love*, § 49  
 amphitheatrum, 2, *amphitheatre*, § 15  
 amplius (Neuter Comparative of amplius, a, um), *more*, § 2  
 angelicus, a, um, *angelic*, § 28  
 angelus, 2, *angel*, § 28  
 Anglia, 1, *England*, § 25  
 Anglicus, a, um, *English*, § 1, § 24  
 Anglus, 2, *Englishman*, § 21;  
   *Angle*, § 24  
 angulus, 2, *angle, corner*, § 12  
 animus, 2, *mind*, § 1  
 Annālēs, 3, pl., *the Annals, a work of Tacitus*, § 1  
 annus, 3, *year* [annual], § 2  
 ante (with Acc.), *before*, § 1; *as adverb*, § 20  
 antequam, *before=before the time when*, § 26  
 antiquus, a, um, *ancient*, § 1

**Antōnius**, 2, *Antony* (the writer of these commentaries), § 52  
**anxius**, a, um, *anxious*, § 52  
 (animō anxius, *anxious in mind*)  
**apertus**, a, um, *open*, § 44, § 56  
**applicō**, 1, *I bring to land* [apply], § 23  
**ap-portō**, 4, *I bring up*, § 9  
**appropinquō**, 1, *I approach*, § 13  
**aptus**, a, um, *fitted* [apt], § 17  
**apud** (with Acc.), *in the house of* (=French *chez*), § 1; *in the writings of*, § 17; *among*, § 46  
**aqua**, 1, *water* [aquarium], § 23;  
 of the water-clock, *aqua haeret*, *the clock stops*, §§ 24, 25;  
*aquam perdō*, *I waste time*, § 32  
**aquila**, 1, *eagle*, § 44  
**āra**, 1, *altar*, § 4  
**ārea**, 1, *open space* [area], § 23  
**argenteus**, a, um, *made of silver*, § 27  
**arma**, 2, neut. plur., *arms*, § 1  
**armātūra**, 1, *armour*, § 38  
**ars** (art-), 3, *art*, § 15  
**a-scendō**, 3, -scendī, *I ascend*, § 38 (lit. *climb up to*, from ad- and scandō; cf. dē-scendō)

**āter**, ātra, ātrum, *dark*, *ill-omened*, § 30  
**atque**, and also, *and*, § 4  
**ātrium**, 2, *hall*  
**atrox** (atrōc-), 3, adj., *horrible*, § 13  
**audācia**, 1, *courage*, *audacity*, § 6  
**audax** (audāc-), 3, adj., *audacious*, *bold*, *courageous*, § 5  
**audiō**, 4, *I hear*, § 40  
**Augustinus**, 2, *Augustine*, first archbishop of Canterbury, died A.D. 604  
**Aulus Plautius**, a Roman general of the time of Claudius, § 5  
**aureus**, a, um, *golden*  
**auscultō**, 1, *I listen*, § 8  
**Austrālia**, 1, *Australia*, § 51  
**Austrāliensis**, e, 3, *Australian*, § 49  
**aut**, or; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, § 17  
**autem**, *however*, *moreover*, *and*, § 1  
**auxilium**, 2, *help*, *aid*; **auxiliō esse**, *to be a help*, § 39; **auxilia** (plur.), *auxiliaries*, § 4  
**ā-vertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus, a, um, *I avert*, lit. *turn away* (cf. Engl. 'averse'), § 52

## B

**balneae**, 1, pl., *baths*, § 15  
**barbarus**, a, um, *barbarous*, § 15  
**basilica**, 1, *basilica*, *church*, § 15  
**Batāvus**, a, um, *Dutch*; **Batāvus**, 2, a *Dutchman*, § 11; *the Dutchman* [Cronje], § 45  
**Bēda**, 1, *Bede*, § 27  
**Belgae**, 1, pl., *Belgians*, a tribe in the north of Gaul and also in South Britain. (Hampshire), § 34  
**bellicōsus**, a, um, *warlike*, § 5  
**bellō**, 1, *I wage war*, § 5  
**bellum**, 2, *war*, § 2  
**bellus**, a, um, *jolly* [French *bel*,

*belle*], § 29; Mons **Bellus**, *Belmont*, on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 44  
**bene**, *well*, § 37  
**beneficium**, 2, *benefit*, *service*, § 56  
**benignus**, a, um, *kind*, § 25  
**Bereta**, 1, *Bertha*, § 25  
**bis**, adv., *twice*, § 54  
**Bodotria**, 1, *Forth* (*firth* of), § 4  
**bonus**, a, um, *good*, § 4  
**bōs** (bov-), 3, *irregular* in some cases; m. or f., *ox*, § 50  
**Boudicca**, 1, the proper form of the name *Boadicea*, queen

of the Iceni, § 8. In Celtic Boudicca means something like 'Victorina' or 'Victoria'  
 brevis, e, 3, adj., *brief, short*, § 56  
 Brigantēs, 3, a tribe in the north of Britain, § 11

Britannia, 1, *Britain*, § 1  
 Britannicus, a, um, *British*, § 3  
 name of a son of Claudius § 5  
 Britannus, 2, *Briton*, § 2

## C

C.=Gāius (Gāium, Gāi, Gāō), § 2  
 cachinnō, 1, *I laugh*, § 17  
 cadens (cadent-), 3, *falling*, § 17  
 cadō, 3, cecidi, *I fall* (of rain, § 50):=*I am killed*, § 48; *I cease*, § 56  
 caelum, 2, *sky, climate*, § 18  
 caeruleus, a, um, *blue*, § 28  
 Caesar, 3, *Caesar*, § 2; *emperor*, § 8  
 Calēdonēs, 3, *the Caledonians*, § 12  
 Calēdonia, 1, *Caledonia, Scotland*, § 11  
 Calēdonius, a, um, *Caledonian, Scottish*, § 12  
 Caligula 1, *Caligula*, the third Roman Emperor, § 2 (from 'caliga,' a soldier's boot)  
 Callēva Atrebatum, *Silchester*, near Basingstoke, § 15  
 calor (calōr-), 3, *heat*, § 47  
 Cambria, 1, *Wales*, § 5  
 campus, 2, *plain*, § 13; campi latī et apertī, *the veldt*, § 44  
 Camulodūnum, 2, *Colchester*, in Essex, § 3  
 Canada, 1, *Canada*, § 49  
 Canadensis, e, of *Canada*, § 53  
 cantans (cantant-), 3, *singing*, § 27  
 Cantium, 2, *Kent*, § 24  
 cantō, 1, *I sing*, § 17  
 capillus, 2, *hair*, § 17  
 capiō, 3, cēpi, captus, a, um, *I take, capture*, § 43; dolōrem capiō, *I feel grief*, § 43; dētrimentum capiō, *I suffer harm*, § 52

captivus, 2, *captive*, § 2; *prisoner*, § 53  
 captō, 1, *I catch*, § 9  
 caput (capit-), 3, n., *head, capital*, § 3; *chapter*, § 1  
 Caratacus, 2, the correct form of the name *Caractacus* (Celtic Caradog), § 3. The form *Caractacus* is a mistake due to one inferior MS. of Tacitus. We have the same Celtic root in 'Mac-Carthy'  
 carmen (-min-), 3, *poem*, § 17; *hymn*, § 27  
 carō (earn-), 3, f., *flesh*, § 50  
 Carthūsianus, a, um, *Carthusian*; Domus Carthūsiana, *Charterhouse School*, § 56  
 carus, a, um, *dear*, § 4; *expensive*, § 51  
 casa, 1, *cottage*, § 13  
 Cassi, 2, a tribe in Hertfordshire, § 7  
 Cassivellaunus, 2, King of the Cassi in Hertfordshire, § 2  
 castellum, 2, *fort*, § 11; *castle*, § 18; *castle-liner*, § 42  
 castra, 2, neut. pl., *camp*, § 5; Castra Mariāna, *Ladysmith*, § 38; for the explanation of the Adjective 'Mariāna' see under the letter M. Caesaris Castra, *Caesar's camp*, an outpost of Ladysmith, § 50  
 catēna, 1, *chain*, § 6

- causa, 1, *cause, reason*, § 12;  
 causā, *by reason, for the sake*,  
 § 9  
 ceber, celebris, celebre, 3, *cele-  
 brated*, § 1; *crowded, fre-  
 quented*, § 9  
 celeriter, *quickly*  
 Celticus, a, um, *Celtic*, § 21  
 cēna, 1, *supper, late dinner*, § 24  
 cēnō, 1, *I sup, dine*, § 18  
 centum (indecl.), *a hundred*, § 3  
 centuria, 1, *company (of soldiers),  
 100 men [century]*, § 53  
 cēreus, 2, *wax taper, candle*, § 23  
 certāmen (-min-), 3, *contest*, § 17  
 cervinus, a, um, *of a stag (Dutch  
 'eland')*, § 38  
 cēteri, ac, a, *the others, the rest*, § 6;  
 —Eng. 'etcetera,' § 32  
 Christiānus, a, um, *Christian*, § 25  
 Christus, 2, *Christ*, § 3  
 cibus, 2, *food*, § 43  
 Cimbrius, a, um, *Cimbrian*;  
 paeninsula Cimbrica, *Jutland,  
 Denmark*, § 24  
 circiter, *about*, § 44  
 circum (Preposition with Acc.; or  
 Adverb), *around*, § 23  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, a,  
 um, *I surround*, § 13  
 cīvis (Gen. Plur. cīvium), 3, *citi-  
 zen*, § 32  
 cīvitas (-tāt-), 3, *state [city]*, § 2;  
*citizenship*, § 32.  
 clādēs, 2, *disaster*, § 8  
 clārus, a, um, *famous*, § 6 [Clara]  
 classiārii, 2, plur., *seamen, men of  
 the fleet, marines*, § 39, § 44  
 classis (Gen. Pl. classium), 3,  
*fleet*, § 11; *class*, § 33  
 Claudiānus, 2, *a Roman poet of  
 the 4th century A.D.*  
 Claudius, 2, *Claudius, the fourth  
 Roman emperor*, § 5  
 clēmens (clēmēt-), 3, *clement,  
 merciful*, § 10  
 clivus, 2, *hill, down*, § 26  
 Clōta, 1, *Clyde, Firth of Clyde*, § 11  
 co-actus, a, um, *compelled*, § 39  
 (see cōgō)  
 cōgitō, 1, *I think, meditate*, § 2  
 co-gnātus, 2, *kinsman*, § 34 (co-  
 aith, gnātus=nātus, *born*)  
 co-gnōmen (-min-), 3, *sur-name,  
 additional name (co- with,  
 gnōmen=nōmen)*, § 31  
 cōgō (=co-agō), 3, *co-ēgi, co-  
 actus, a, um, I compel*; with  
 Infin. § 39; with *ut* and  
 Subj. § 54  
 cohors (cohort-), 3, *cohort* (—about  
 500 men; one-tenth part of  
 a legion), § 11; *battalion*  
 (—eight companies; about  
 800 men), § 38  
 col-ligō, 3, -lēgi, -lectus, a, um,  
*I collect (con, together, legō,  
 I gather)*, § 36  
 collis (Gen. Pl. collium), 3, m.,  
*hill*, § 13  
 col-locātus, a, um, *having been  
 placed*, § 6  
 col-locō, 1, *I place [locate]*, § 5  
 colō, 3, colui, cultus, a, um, *I  
 cultivate*, § 32  
 colōnia, 1, *colony, settlement*,  
 § 5; *Cape Colony*, § 38  
 colōnus, 2, *tiller of the soil, settler*,  
*Boer*, § 32  
 columba, 1, *pigeon*, § 43  
 commemorō, 1, *I mention [com-  
 memorate]*, § 3  
 commentārii, 2, pl., *notes, com-  
 mentaries*, § 36  
 com-meō, 1, *I go there and back,  
 I travel*, § 18  
 com-mittō, 3, -misi, -missus, a,  
 um, *I engage in [commit,  
 commission]*, § 39  
 com-moveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtus, a, um  
*move, stir [commotion]*, § 28  
 com-mūniō (-iōn-), 3, *community,  
 partnership*, § 34, § 56  
 com-mūnis, e, 3, *common*, § 56  
 com-parō, 1, *I get together, pre-  
 pare*, § 11

**com-pellō**, 3, **-puli**, **-pulsus**, a, um, *I drive together* [compel, compulsion], § 40  
**con-clāmō**, 1, *I proclaim aloud*, § 53  
**con-cordia**, 1, *concord, harmony, friendliness*, § 56  
**con-discipulus**, 2, *school-fellow*, § 43  
**con-dō**, 3, **-didī**, **-ditus**, a, um, *I found* (con-, together, dō, 1 put), § 35  
**confusus**, a, um, *confused, mingled together* (from con-fundō), § 46  
**con-gregō**, 1, *I gather together* [congregation], § 11  
**con-iciō** (=con-iciō), 3, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, a, um, *I throw: in fugam con., I put to flight*, § 44  
**con-scribō**, 3, **-scripsī**, **scriptus**, a, um, *I enroll* (lit. write together, hence 'conscript'), § 36  
**con-secrō**, 1, *I consecrate, immortalize*, § 10  
**con-servō**, 1, *I preserve* [conserve, conservative], § 56  
**consilium**, 2, *counsel, plan, policy*, § 5  
**con-sociō**, 1, *I ally, unite*, § 3; **consociātus**, a, um, *united*, § 38  
**con-spiciō**, 3, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, a, um, *I catch sight of, discern, see*, § 46  
**con-stituō**, 3, **-stitui**, **-stitutus**, a, um, *I fix, determine* [constitute, constitution], § 50; **constituō ut** (with Subj.), *I resolve that*, § 54  
**con-stō**, **-stāre**, **-stiti**, *I consist* [con-, together, stō, I stand]; *I cost*, § 50; **constat** (3rd person) *—is known*, § 24  
**consultum**, 2, *resolution*, § 37  
**con-tendō**, 3, **-tendī**, *I strive, contend*, § 46  
**con-tineō**, 2, **-tinui**, **-tentus**, a, um, *I con-tain, hold together* (con,

*together, teneō, I hold*); passive with Abl. = *depend on*, § 56  
**contrā** (with Acc.), *against*, § 4  
**contrārius**, a, um, *contrary, contradictory*, § 56  
**contumēlia**, 1, *insult*, § 32  
**con-vocō**, 1, *I call together*, § 6  
**cōpia**, 1, *abundance*, § 9  
**cōpiae** (plur.), *forces*, § 2  
**Coritāni**, 2, plur., a British tribe in Lincolnshire, § 8  
**cornū**, 4, *horn, wing* (of a building, § 23; of an army, § 47)  
**corpus** (corpor-), 3, *body* [corporal], § 13; *a political body*, § 49  
**cotidiē**, adv., *every day*, § 1  
**crēber**, **crēbra**, **crēbrum**, *crowded* (Abl. = *with*), *frequent*, § 41  
**cremātus**, a, um, *burned*, § 13  
**cremō**, 1, *I burn* [cremation], § 8  
**creō**, 1, *I create*, § 2  
**crūdēlis**, e, 3, adj., *cruel*, § 8  
**crux** (cruc-), 3, *cross*, § 23; *crux Victōriāna, the Victoria Cross*, § 56  
**culina**, 1, *kitchen*  
**cum** (with Abl.), *together with*, *with*, § 5  
**cum**, *when*, § 3  
**cunctandō**, by *delaying* (from cunctor, *I delay*), § 49  
**cuncti**, ae, a, plur., *all together* (from co-iuncti), § 56  
**cuniculus**, 2, *underground passage, tunnel, mine* (properly *rabbit-hole*), § 23  
**Cynobelinus**, 2, *Cymbeline*, a British king, § 3  
**cupidus**, a, um, *desirous, eager*, § 6  
**eupio**, 3, **eupivī**, **eupitus**, a, um, *I desire*, § 43  
**cūr**, *why*, § 18  
**cūra**, 1, *care*, § 2  
**cūrō**, 1, *I care for, attend to, mind*, § 32; with ut = *take care that*, § 52

**currō**, 3, **eu-curri**, *I run* [current — running water], § 49; (of Time), *run out, pass*, § 32  
**cursus**, 4, **cuisse**, § 24

**custodiō**, 4, *I guard, keep, preserve*, § 40  
**custos** (**custōd-**), 3, *keeper, guard*, § 23, **Custōdēs Rēgālēs**, *the Guards*, § 44.

## D

**dē** (with Abl.), *about*, § 1; *down from, or from*, § 28  
**dē-bellātus**, a, **um**, *defeated, conquered* (lit. *warred down*), § 4  
**dē-bellō**, 1, *I defeat, war down*, § 2  
**dē-beō**, 2, **dē-buī**, **dē-bitus**, a, **um**, *I owe* (from **dē-habēō**), § 56  
**dē-cedō**, 3, **-cessi**, *I depart, decrease*; with Abl. — *from*, § 56  
**decem** (indeclinable), *ten*, § 9  
**December**, **bris**, **bre**, 3, *of December*, § 43  
**decimus**, a, **um**, *tenth*, § 2  
**decus** (**decor-**), 3, *distinction* [*decor-ation*], § 56  
**dē-dō**, 3, **-didi**, **-ditus**, a, **um**, *I surrender*, § 39  
**dē-dūcō**, 3, **-duxi**, **-ductus**, a, **um**, *I draw away, withdraw* [*duct*], § 37  
**dē-fendō**, 3, **-fendi**, **-fensus**, a, **um**, *I defend*, § 35  
**dēfensor** (**dēfensōr-**), 3, *defender*, § 4  
**dē-ficiō**, 3, **-feci**, **-fectus**, a, **um**, *I desert, forsake*; (in the 3rd person) *it runs short, comes to an end*, § 43  
**deinde**, adv., *thereupon, next*, § 5, § 18  
**dēlectō**, 1, *I delight*, § 1; Passive, *I am delighted, I am interested*, §§ 16, 17  
**dēlēō**, 2, **dēlēvī**, **dēlēt-us**, a, **um**, *I destroy*, § 22  
**dēnārius**, 2, a Roman silver coin — *one shilling*, § 50  
**dēnegō**, 1, *I deny, refuse*, § 32  
**densus**, a, **um**, *dense, thick*  
**dēplōrō**, 1, *I deplore, lament*, § 48

**dēportō**, 1, *I carry off, deport*, § 5  
**dē-scendō**, 3, **-scendi**, *I descend*, lit. *climb down*, § 50  
**dē-spērō**, 1, *I despair*, § 49; with Accusative, *I despair of*, § 53  
**dē-sum**, **dē-esse**, **dē-inī**, *I am wanting*, § 1  
**dētrimentum**, 2, *loss, harm, detriment*: *quid dētrimentī*, *any harm, lit anything of harm, anything in the way of harm*, § 52  
**deus**, 2, **god**, § 7; **dī** (Nom. Plur.), § 8  
**Dēva**, 1, *Chester*, § 5  
**dexter**, **dextra**, **dextrum**, *right*, § 23  
**dextra**, 1, *right hand*, § 17  
**dic**, *say* (Imperative of **dicō**)  
**dicō**, 3, **dixi**, **dictus**, a, **um**, *I tell, say, speak*, § 32; *I declare*, § 34  
**diēs**, 5, generally m., *day*, § 29  
**difficilis**, e, 3, *difficult*, § 1; Superlative **difficillimus**, a, **um**, § 54  
**diligenter**, adv., *diligently*, § 37  
**discipulus**, 2, **pupul** [*disciple*], § 33  
**discordia**, 1, *quarrel, discord*, § 31  
**disputō**, 1, *I dispute*, § 19  
**di-stō**, 1, *I am distant*, § 42  
**dū**, *long, for a long time*, § 43  
**diurnus**, a, **um**, *of the day*, § 40  
**diversus**, a, **um**, *diverse, different*, § 21 (**ā**, *from*)  
**dīvidō**, 3, **dīvisi**, **dīvisus**, a, **um**, *I divide*, § 33  
**dīvisus**, a, **um**, *divided*, § 4 (Adj. formed from **dīvidō**)

**divus, a, um, divine, deified, § 2 :**  
an adjective applied to emperors after their death; the Romans used to worship them as gods  
**dō, dare, dedī, I give, § 1 ; I put (morti, to death, § 3 ; in fugam, to flight, § 13 ; in viam, to the road, § 18, § 29) ; I send (litterās, a letter, § 31) ; I deliver (impetum, an attack, § 50)**  
**doceō, 2, docuī, doctus, a, um, I teach [doctor—teacher], § 25**  
**doctus, a, um, learned, taught [doctor], § 19**  
**dolor (dolōr-), 3, grief, § 43**  
**domesticus, a, um, internal [domestic] ; bellum domesticum, civil war, § 2**  
**domī, at home, § 29, § 49**  
**domina, 1, mistress [dame], § 36**  
**domō, 1, domui, domitus, a, um, I subdue, § 56**  
**domum, homewards (home), § 18**  
**domus (irregularly declined, see Preparations, § 27), f., home, § 25 ; house, § 27**

**dōnec, until, § 49**  
**Druidae, 1, pl., Druids, § 7**  
**Dubrae, 1, pl., Dover, § 16**  
**ducenti, ae, a, two hundred, § 42**  
**dūcō, 3, duxī, ductus, a, um, I draw, derive, § 33 ; I lead, § 36 ; via dūcit, the way leads, § 44**  
**dulcis, 3, adj., sweet, pleasant, § 47**  
**dum, while, § 1**  
**duo, duae, duo (Gen. duōrum, duarum ; Dat., Abl. duōbus, duābus), two, § 1**  
**duodecim (indeclinable), twelve, § 36**  
**duodecimus, a, um, twelfth, § 6**  
**duodecīgēsīmus, a, um, seventy-eighth, § 10**  
**duodētrīcēsīmus, a, um, twenty-eighth, § 45**  
**duodēvīcēsīmus, a, um, eighteenth, § 47**  
**duodēvigintī (indeclinable), eighteen, § 35**  
**Durovernum, 2, Canterbury, § 25**  
**dux (duc-), 3, leader, general, § 1**

## E

**Eburācum, 2, York, § 20**  
**ecce, behold, § 8**  
**ēducātus, a, um (from ēducō, 1), educated, § 56**  
**ē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, a, um, I lead out, § 47**  
**ef-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fusus, a, um, I pour out [ef-fus-ive, confuse], § 40**  
**ego, I, § 17**  
**ēgregius, a, um, excellent, § 47 ; eminent, distinguished, § 48**  
**ēlapsus, a, um, elapsed, slipped away, § 1**  
**ē-mittō, -mīsī, -missus, a, um, I send out, § 40 ; I let out, § 50**

**ēn, behold, here is, § 36**  
**enim, for, § 41**  
**eō, adv., thither, § 43**  
**Epaticeus, 2, brother of Cuno-belinus, § 3**  
**eques (equit-), 3, horse-soldier, § 38**  
**equester, tris, tre, 3, cavalry (used as an adj.), equestrian, § 2**  
**equinus, a, um, of a horse ; carō equina, horse-flesh, § 50 ; Mons Equinus, Paardeberg (=horse-mountain), § 53**  
**equitō, 1, I ride, § 8**  
**equis, 2, horse, § 6**  
**error (errōr-), 3, error, mistake**



esse (Pres. Infin. of sum, *I am*),  
to be, § 17  
essedum, 2, *chariot*, § 8  
estō (Imperative of sum, *I am*;  
2nd or 3rd pers. sing.), *be or*  
*let there be*, § 49; *granted*,  
§ 56  
et, *and*  
et . . . et, *both . . . and*  
etiam, *also, even*, § 15; *etiam*  
*atque etiam, again and again*,  
§ 36, § 43  
Itōna, 1, *Eton*, § 56  
eugē, *bravo!* (§ in Plautus), § 18  
Eurōpa, 1, *Europe*, § 41  
Eurōpaeus, a, um, *European*, § 33  
ēvādō, 3, *ēvāsī, I escape*, § 53  
ex (with Abl.), *out of, from*, § 1, § 9  
(servō ex clāde); *since*, § 35;  
*instead of*, § 54, § 56, l. 26  
ex quō, *since*, § 25  
excavō, 1, *I excavate*, § 23  
exclāmo, 1, *I exclaim*, § 18

exemplum, 2, *example*, § 36  
exercitus, 2, *army*, § 34  
existimō, 1, *I consider* [estimate],  
§ 14  
expeditiō (-iōn-), 3, *expedition*, § 4  
exphcō, 1, *I explain*, § 1; *deploy*,  
*arrange*  
explōrator (explōrātōr-), 3, *scout*  
[exploration], § 46  
explōrō, 1, *I explore*, § 11; *I in-*  
*vestigate*, § 50  
expugnō, 1, *I storm, take by*  
*storm*, § 2  
ex-scribō, 3, -scripsi, -scriptus, a,  
um, *I write out, copy*, § 36  
expectatiō (-iōn-), 3, *expectation*,  
§ 9  
expectō, 1, *I expect, await*, § 12  
expirō, 1, *I expire, die*, § 20; *I*  
*breathe out*, § 56  
ex-stō, -stāre, -stiti, *I exist, re-*  
*main, am extant*, § 3

## F

Fabius Maximus, 2, a celebrated  
Roman general in the Second  
Punic War; called 'Cunctā-  
tor,' *the Delayer*; § 49  
fabricō, 1, *I manufacture* [fabri-  
cate], § 55  
fābula, 1, *story, drama* [fable], § 17  
faciēs, 5, *face, form*, § 28  
facile, adv., *easily*, § 5  
facilis, a, um, *easy*, § 5; superlative  
facillimus, a, um (cf. dif-  
ficillimus)  
facinus (facinor-), 3, *deed, achieve-*  
*ment, exploit*, § 12; facinus  
pulchrum et periculōsum, *an*  
*act of great gallantry*, § 48  
faciō, 3, feci, factus, a, um, *I make*,  
*do*, § 43; *I perform*, § 48  
falsus, a, um, *false*, § 8  
fānum, 2, *shrine*, § 7  
fatigātus, a, um, *tired* [fatigued],  
*jagged*, § 22

Februārius, a, um, *of February*,  
§ 52  
fēmina, 1, *woman* [hence 'femin-  
ine'], § 8  
fenestra, 1, *window*, § 26  
ferē, *almost, about*, § 3  
fēriae, 1, pl., *holidays*, § 1  
fēriātus, a, um, *unemployed*; diēs  
fēriātus, *a holiday*, § 30  
ferox (ferōc-), 3, adj., *warlike*  
ferrātus, a, um, *fitted with iron*,  
*shod with iron*; via ferrāta,  
*railway*, § 50  
ferus, a, um, *savage, fierce*, § 4  
festinō, 1, *I hurry*, § 18  
festus, a, um, *festal, festive*; diēs  
festus, *a holy day*, § 30;  
ornātus festus, *holiday attire*,  
§ 50; ignēs festi, *illumina-*  
*tions, fireworks*, § 55  
fidēs, 5, *faith, truth, loyalty*, § 28  
fidus, a, um, *faithful*, § 25

**divus, a, um, divine, dei**  
 an adjective applied to  
 persons after their death, *finēs, m.,*  
*Romans used boundaries,*  
*them as gods*  
**dō, dare, dedi, I then [make firm],**  
*(morti, to*  
*to flight, firm, § 56*  
*the roa m, yellow, § 28*  
*(litter, I flourish, § 56*  
*liver, um, 2, Bloemfontein*  
*§ flower fountain), the*  
**doceō, capital of the Orange River**  
*Colony, § 56*  
**donen (-min-), 3, river, § 2**  
**uō, 3, fluxi, I flow, § 47**  
**locus, 2, hearth, home, § 4**  
**fodiō, 3, fodi, fossus, a, um, I dig,**  
 § 43. Hence comes the word  
 'fossil' (= a thing dug up)  
**foedus (foeder-), 3, league [con-**  
**feder-ation], § 48 (heading),**  
 § 49  
**foliis (Gen. Plur. folium), 3, m.,**  
*a ball inflated with air, a*  
*football, § 17*  
**forma, 1, form, shape, § 23**  
**formidō, 1, I fear, § 6**  
**fortasse, perhaps, § 17**

**forte, adv., by chance, perchance,**  
 § 17  
**fortis, 3, adj., brave, strong, § 2**  
**fortiter, bravely, § 5; fortissimē,**  
*very bravely, § 38*  
**fortitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, fortitude,**  
*bravery, § 54*  
**fortius, comp. adv., more bravely,**  
 § 54  
**fortūna, 1, fortune, fate, § 24;**  
*good fortune, § 48*  
**forum, 2, market place, forum,**  
 § 15, § 28  
**fossa, 1, trench, § 44 (from fodiō,**  
*I dig)*  
**foveō, 2, fovi, fōtus, a, um, I foster,**  
 § 56  
**Franci, 2, plur., Franks, § 25**  
**Francogallus, 2, a Frenchman, § 32**  
**frāter (frātr-), 3, brother, § 3**  
**fretum, 2, channel, straits, § 11**  
**frustrā, in vain, § 39**  
**fuga, 1, flight, § 13**  
**fuisse (Perf. Inf. of sum, I am),**  
*to have been, § 19*  
**fundamentum, 2, foundation, § 22**  
**furor (furor-), 3, madness [fury],**  
 § 39

## G

**Gallia, 1, Gaul, § 2**  
**Gallicus, a, um, Gallic, § 4; fretum**  
*Gallicum, the English Channel*  
**gallina, 1, hen, fowl, § 50**  
**gaudeō, 2 (Perf. Irreg.), I rejoice,**  
 § 22  
**gaudium, 2, joy, delight, § 51**  
**geminō, 1, I double, I return (a**  
*ball), § 17*  
**gens (gent-), 3, tribe [gentile]. § 3;**  
*nation, § 56*  
**genus (gener-), 3, kind [gener-al],**  
 § 40; *race, § 56*  
**Germānia, 1, Germany, § 33; the**  
*name of a work of Tacitus, § 34*

**Germānicus, a, um, Germanic,**  
*Teutonic, § 21*  
**germānus, 2, brother, § 34; ger-**  
**māna, 1, sister**  
**Germānus, 2, a German, Teuton,**  
 § 32  
**gerō, 3, gessi, gestus, a, um, I**  
*wear, § 55; I wage (bellum,*  
*war), § 56*  
**glōria, 1, glory, fame, § 56**  
**Graecus, a, um, Greek; Graecus,**  
 2, *a Greek, § 57*  
**grāmineus, a, um, grassy, § 26**  
**grandis, e, 3, adj., big, grand,**  
 § 6

**grātia**, 1, *gratitude, thanks*, § 51;  
**grātiās agō**, *I return thanks*,  
 § 56  
**grātus**, a, um, *pleasing*, § 18  
**Grampius**, a, um, *Grampian*, § 11

**graviter**, adv., *seriously, severely*  
 [gravely], § 38  
**Gregorius**, 2, *Gregory*, § 25  
**gremium**, 2, *bosom*, § 56  
**gustō**, 1, *I taste*, § 31

## H

**habēō**, 2, **habui**, **habitus**, a, um,  
*I have*, § 22; **bene mē habēō**,  
*I am all right*, § 22; *I hold*,  
 § 24  
**habitō**, 1, *I dwell*, § 8  
**haerēō**, 2, **haesi**, *I stick*, § 24  
**Helvētius**, 2, a *Swiss* (noun), § 32  
**heri**, adv., *yesterday*, § 42  
**heu**, interjection, *alas!*, § 28  
**Hibernia**, 1, *Ireland*, § 19  
**Hibernicus**, a, um, *Irish*, § 38  
**hic**, adv., *here, at this place*, § 23  
**hic**, **haec**, **hōc**, *this*, § 10; **hī**  
*viginti diēs, these (-the last)*  
*twenty days*, § 44  
**hiems** (hiem-), 3, *winter*  
**hilaris**, a, um, *cheerful, merry*,  
*hilarious*, § 47  
**hinc**, adv., *hence, from this place*,  
 § 22  
**historia**, 1, *history*, § 1; *Historiae*  
 (plur.), *Histories, a work of*  
*Tacitus*, § 34

**historicus**, a, um, *historical*, § 19  
**hodiē**, *to-day, at the present day*,  
*nowadays*, § 3  
**hodiernus**, a, um, *of the present*  
*day*, § 17  
**homō** (homin-), 3, *man*, § 2  
**honor** or **honōs** (**honōr-**), 3,  
*honour*, § 24  
**hōra**, 1, *hour*, § 1, § 18 (*o'clock*);  
*-time*, § 32  
**Horātius**, 2 (*Quintus Horātius*  
*Flaccus*), a Roman poet of  
 the age of Augustus, § 4  
**horridus**, a, um, *rugged, savage*  
*[horrid]*, § 38  
**hospitium**, 2, *inn*  
**hostis** (Gen. Plur. *hostium*), 3,  
*enemy [hostile]*, § 4  
**hūc**, adv., *hither, to this place*, § 25  
**hūusmodi**, *of this kind*, § 45  
**hūmānus**, a, um, *humane, kind*,  
*civilized*, § 10; *human*, § 56  
**humō**, 1, *I bury*, § 56

## I

**iaceō**, 2, **iacui**, *I lie (-am situ-*  
*ed)*, § 22, § 46  
**iaciō**, 3, **iēci**, **iactus**, a, um, *I*  
*throw*, § 43  
**iactō**, 1, *I hurl*, § 13  
**iam**, *already*, § 6; *iam tum, even*  
*then (-even at that early*  
*time)*, § 9; *any longer* (with  
 a negative): *nōn iam, no*  
*longer, not any longer*; *nullus*  
*iam, none any longer*, § 50  
**iānuā**, 1, *door, gate*, § 56  
**Iānuārius**, a, um, *of January*, § 47

**ibi**, *there*, § 1  
**icēni**, 2, plur., a British tribe in  
*Norfolk*, § 7  
**īdūs**, 4, plur., *Idēs* (about the  
 middle of a month; the  
 13th or 15th day), § 30  
**ientāculum**, 2, *breakfast*, § 18  
**igitur**, *therefore, then*, § 1  
**ignāvus**, a, um, *cowardly, coward*,  
 § 7  
**ignis** (Gen. Plur. *ignium*), 3, m.,  
*fire, flash*, § 46  
**ignōrō**, 1, *I do not know* [ignore]

ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*, § 8  
 ille, illa, illud, *you, that*, § 7; *the great, the well-known*, § 56  
 illustrō, i, I *illustrate*, § 1; *light up*, § 29  
 imber (imbr-), 3, *shower, rain*, § 46  
 immō, adv., *on the contrary*, § 37  
 imperātor (imperātor-), 3, *commander*, § 16; *commander-in-chief*, § 42  
 imperfectus, a, um, *imperfect, incomplete*, § 56  
 imperitō, i, I *am emperor*, § 3; I *give orders* (Dat. —to), *hold sway* (Dat. —over), § 6; *without Dat.*, § 8  
 imperium, 2, *empire*, § 3; *command*, § 10, plur. § 46  
 imperō, I *order*, § 1; (with Dat.), I *impose* (upon), § 2; imperō ut (with Subjunctive), I *order that* (something shall be done), § 51.  
 impetus, 4, *assault, attack*, § 43; *charge*, § 44;  *fury*, § 54  
 impiger, impigra, impigrum, *active* (not sluggish), § 17  
 impigrē, *actively, bravely*, § 38  
 implorō, i, I *implore*, § 6  
 in (with Abl.), *in or on*, § 1; (with Acc.), *into or onto*, § 2  
 in-certus, a, um, *un-certain*, § 26  
 in-cidō, 3, -cidi, I *fall upon* (with Dat.), § 39 [hence English 'incident']; I *fall into* (in insidiās), § 46  
 in-cipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptus, a, um, I *begin*, § 44  
 incitō, i, I *urge, incite*, § 8  
 incola, i, *inhabitant*, § 2  
 in-colō, 3, -colui, I *inhabit*, § 32  
 incommodum, 2, *misfortune, reverse*, § 39  
 indāgō (-gin-), 3, *net*, § 13  
 inde, *thence*  
 index (indic-), 3, *index*; *index verborum, vocabulary*  
 indicō, i, I *indicate, point out*, § 46

in-dicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus, a, um, I *declare* (bellum, war), § 37  
 inferior (inferiōr-), 3, comp. adj., *lower* [inferior], § 24  
 in-fluō, 3, -fluxi, I *flow* [influx], § 33  
 in-fundō, 3, -fūdī, -fusus, a, um, I *pour in* [infuse, infusion], § 34  
 ingens (ingent-), 3, adj., *huge*, § 9  
 inhūmānus, a, um, *unkind, in-human*, § 14; *uncivilized*, § 15  
 in-humātus, a, um, *un-buried*, § 13  
 in-iquus, a, um, *un-favourable* (in-, un-, aequus, equal, *favourable*), § 39  
 initium, 2, *beginning*, § 20  
 iniūria, i, *injury, wrong*, § 7  
 inopia, i, *want*, § 50  
 inquam, *say I, I say*, § 21; *inquit, says he, he says*, § 6; *inquimus, we say*, § 18; *inquunt, they say*, § 22  
 in-scribō, 3, -scripsi, -scriptus, a, um, I *inscribe, write an inscription*, § 56  
 insidiae, i, plur., *ambush, trap*, § 46  
 in-sido, 3, -sēdi, -sessus, a, um, I *settle on, am perched on*, § 44  
 insigne, 3 (declined like mare), *distinction, badge* [ensign], § 34  
 insignis, e, 3, *distinguished*, § 5  
 in-stō, -stāre, -stiti, I *am at hand*, § 30 (with Dat.); I *pursue*, § 45  
 insula, i, *island*, § 2  
 in-sum, -fui, -esse, I *am in*, § 1; *sometimes with Dat.*  
 intactus, a, um, *untouched, intact*, § 4  
 inter (with Acc.), *between*, § 8, § 31; *during*, § 18; *among*, § 7, § 19, § 32; *inter se, one with the other, mutually*, § 56

interdum, sometimes, § 1  
 interea, meanwhile, § 9  
 interficiō, 3, -feci, -fectus, a, um,  
 • I kill (lit. make away with), § 43  
 interim, meanwhile  
 interior (interior-), 3, interior,  
 inner, § 1  
 interrogō, 1, I ask, enquire, § 19  
 intrā (with Acc.), within, § 23;  
 • (of time), § 29  
 intrō, 1, I enter, § 2  
 invictus, a, um, unconquered, in-  
 vincible  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, -self, § 6; in  
 ipso tempore, at the very  
 time, in the nick of time, § 39  
 ira, 1, anger, wrath, § 15, § 27  
 is, ea, id, that, § 2; is . . . quī,  
 he . . . who, ei . . . quī,  
 those . . . who, § 51

Isca, 1, Caerleon, on the Usk, not  
 far from Cardiff, § 5  
 ita, thus, so, § 21; in such a way,  
 § 53  
 Italia, 1, Italy, § 6  
 itaque, accordingly, therefore, § 3  
 iter (itiner-), 3, n., march, § 39;  
 iter faciō, I march, § 44  
 iterum, a second time, § 23  
 iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus, a, um, I bid,  
 command, § 25  
 Iūdaeus, 2, Jew, § 32  
 iudicō, 1, I judge, § 49  
 Iūnius, a, um, of June, § 56  
 iustus, a, um, just, § 10; proper,  
 regular, § 13 (iustum proe-  
 lium, a pitched battle)  
 iuvat (3rd pers. sing., present  
 tense, 1st Conj.), it delights,  
 § 17

## K

Kalendae, 1, plur., Calends, the first day of each month, § 1

## L

labor (labōr-), 3, labour, toil, § 35  
 labōrō, 1, I labour, am in diffi-  
 culties, § 39  
 lāc (lact-), 3, n., milk, § 50  
 lacus, 4, lake, pond; Lacus  
 Grāmineus, Graspan (=Grass  
 Pond), on the frontier of the  
 Orange River Colony, § 44  
 laetitia, 1, delight, happiness, § 56  
 laevus, a, um, left; laeva, left  
 hand, § 17  
 later, 3, brick, § 22  
 Latīnē, adv., in Latin  
 Latinus, a, um, Latin, § 15  
 lātus, a, um, wide, broad, § 15  
 laudō, 1, I praise, § 16  
 laus (laud-), 3, praise, § 44  
 lectitō, 1, I read, § 1  
 lectus, 2, bed, § 29

lēgātus, 2, lieutenant-general,  
 general [legate], § 38  
 legiō (-iōn-), 3, legion (about  
 5,000 men), § 9; brigade  
 (consisting of four battalions,  
 about 3,200 men), § 47  
 legō, 3, lēgī, lectus, a, um, I read,  
 § 34  
 lentē, slowly, § 49  
 levis, e, 3, light: equitēs Africāni  
 levis armātūrae, Imperial  
 Light Horse (consisting of  
 Outlanders of the Transvaal),  
 § 38  
 libenter, gladly, willingly, § 17  
 liber, libr-um, -i, -ō, 2, book, § 1  
 liber, libera, liberum, free (some-  
 times with Abl.—from), § 4;  
 independent, § 49

**liberī**, 2, pl., *children* (properly an adjective meaning "free ones," i.e. children of free-born parents), § 7

**liberō**, 1, *I liberate, set free*; **urbem obsidiōne liberō**, *I raise the siege of a town*, § 44

**libertās** (-tāt-), 3, *liberty, freedom*, § 4

**licet** (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. licuit), *it is allowed* (Dat., to), *it is lawful* (Dat., for), § 56. [Hence licentia, 'licence.']

**lingua**, 1, *tongue, language*, § 15

**littera**, 1, *letter* (of the alphabet), § 3; **litterae** (pl.), *literature, letters*, § 15; *a letter* = *an epistle*, § 31

**litterārius**, a, um, *connected with letters* (litterae), *literary*, § 15

**litus** (litor-), 3, *coast*, § 2  
**locus**, 2, *place* (pl. loca, n.), *or passage of a book* (pl. loci, m.), § 1; **locō**, *in place, instead* (with Gen.)

**Londinium**, 2, *London*, § 9

**longē**, *far*, § 8

**longinquus**, a, um, *distant*, § 56

**longus**, a, um, *long*, § 2; **longum**, *a long story*, § 31

**lūdus**, 2, *game*, § 1; **lūdus litterārius**, *school*, § 15

**Luguvallium**, 2, *Carlsruhe*, § 11

**lūna**, 1, *moon*, § 29

**lupus**, 2, *wolf*, § 12

**lux** (lūc-), 3, *light*, § 55

## M

**Macrifontium**, 2, *Magersfontein* (= 'Lean or Meagre Fountain'), on the frontier of the Orange River Colony, § 45

**magister**, 2, *schoolmaster, teacher*, § 1

**magnitūdō** (-tūdin-), 3, *magnitude, greatness*, § 49

**magnopere** (= magnō opere), *greatly*, § 10

**magnus**, a, um, *great, large*, § 2

**māior** (m., f.), **māius** (n.), (māiōr-)

3, *greater* [major, major-ity], § 15; **Māior Britannia**, *Greater Britain*, § 49

**māiōrēs** (plur.), *ancestors*, § 20

**Maiūba**, 1, *Majuba*, a hill on the northern frontier of Natal, § 35

**Maiūbensis**, e, 3, *of Majuba*, § 52

**Mancuniensis**, e, 3, *of Manchester* (Mancunium); **Mancunien-sēs**, *the Manchesters*, § 50

**mandō**, 1, *I commit, entrust*, § 5

**māne** (indeclinable), *properly in the morning*, § 1; *on the morning*, § 46; **ā māne**, *from morning*, § 30

**maneō**, 2, **mansi**, *I remain*, § 26

**manūmissiō** (-iōn-), 3, *manumission, liberation*

**manus**, 4, f., *hand*, § 23; *power, possession*, § 28; *band*, § 25

**manūscriptus**, a, um, *manuscript* (*written by the hand*)

**Marcus**, 2, *Mark*, § 1

**mare**, 3, *sea*, § 1

**Mariānus**, a, um, *Marian*; **Castra Mariāna**, *Ladysmith*, the headquarters of the British forces in Natal; so called after the wife of Sir Harry Smith. Her Christian names were *Juana Maria*

**maritimus**, a, um, *of the sea, maritime*, § 11

**Martiālis**, 3, *Martial*, a Roman poet of the first century A.D. § 17, § 33

**Martius, a, um, of March, § 53**  
**māter (mātr-), 3, mother, § 38**  
*maximē, chiefly*  
**maximus, a, um, greatest, very great, Superlative of magnus, a, um, § 20**  
*mē, me, § 1; mēcum, with me*  
**mediocriter, moderately, tolerably, § 15**  
**mediterrāneus, a, um, midland, inland, § 3; mediterrānea, pl., n., the midlands**  
**medius, a, um, mid, middle, § 16**  
**mellior (m., f.), melius (n.), better, Comparative of bonus, a, um, § 18**  
**membrum, 2, limb [member], § 33**  
**memoria, 1, memory, § 10; memoriā teneō, I remember, § 24; in memoriā (with Gen.), in memory (of), § 55**  
**mensis (Gen. Plur. mensium), 3, m., month, § 1**  
**mercātor, 3, merchant, § 9**  
**mereō, 2, merui, meritus, a, um, I merit, earn, § 56**  
**meridiānus, a, um, southern (lit. of the mid-day; see meridiēs), § 2**  
**meridiēs, 5, m., South (lit. mid-day), § 50**  
**meus (Voc. mī, § 17), mea, meum, my, § 1**  
**migrō, 1, I migrate, § 19**  
**mihi, to me, § 1**  
**miles (milit-), 3, soldier, § 13**  
**milia, 3, thousands, § 9**  
**militāris, e, 3, military: rēs militāris, warfare, § 35**  
**mittō, 1, I serve (as a soldier), § 11**  
**mille (indeclinable in the Singular; plural milia, declinable, § 9), a thousand, § 55**  
**millēsimus, a, um, thousandth, § 56**  
**minimus, a, um, Superlative of parvus, smallest, least; minimus natū, youngest (lit. last by birth), § 49**

**minister, ministr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, servant, minister, § 25; Minister of State, § 31**  
**ministrō, 1, I attend [minister], § 47 (tormentis ministrō, I serve the guns)**  
**minor (m., f.), minus (n.), Comparative of parvus, smaller, less, § 17**  
**minus, adv., less, § 8; not very, § 45**  
**mirus, a, um, wonderful, strange, § 6**  
**miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, miserable, wretched, § 14**  
**misericordia, 1, pity, § 28**  
**missile, 3, missile, § 13**  
**mittō, 3, misi, missus, a, um, I send (sometimes—I let go), § 32**  
**mōbilitās (-tāt-), 3, mobility, § 17**  
**modus, 2, manner, way, § 13**  
**Mōna, 1, Isle of Anglesea, § 7**  
**mons (mont-), 3, m., mountain, § 5**  
**monstrō, 1, I show, point out, § 2**  
**monumentum, 2, monument, § 10**  
**mora, 1, delay, § 18**  
**mors (mort-), 3, death, § 3**  
**mortifer, a, um, death-bringing, deadly, § 46 (compare frūgifer, aquilifer, etc.)**  
**mortuus, a, um, dead, § 7**  
**mōs (mōr-), 3, custom, § 6; mōre suo, according to his custom, § 53**  
**moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, a, um, I move [motion]; hostem locō moveō, I move the enemy from his position, I dislodge the enemy, § 54**  
**mox, in due course (soon), § 29**  
**multitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, multitude, § 6**  
**multus, a, um, much: multi, ae, a, many, § 2; multa, many things, § 1; multum (adv.), much, very much, § 1; very,**

§ 34; multō, *by much* (multō plus, *much more*, lit. *more by much*, § 36; multō ante, *much before*, long before, § 41)  
mūlus, 2, *mule*, § 39

mūniō, 4, *I fortify*, § 40  
mūrus, 2, *wall*, § 7  
mūtatiō (-iōn-), 3, *change*, § 30.  
mūtātus, a, um, *changed*, § 17  
mūtō, 1, *I change*, § 49

## N

nam, *for*, § 1  
narrō, 1, *I tell, narrate*, § 6  
natālis, e, *connected with birth*:  
Terra Natālis, *the land of the Nativity, Natal*, so called because discovered on Christmas Day, § 36; fēriae Natālēs, *Christmas holidays*, § 43  
nātiō (-iōn-), 3, *tribe, nation*, § 16, § 21  
natō, 1, *I swim, bathe*, § 1  
nātus, 4, *birth*, § 49  
nātus, a, um, *born*, § 3; *produced*, § 31 (cp. *native oysters*)  
ante Christum nātum—B.C.  
post Christum nātum—A.D.  
sexāginta annōs nātus, *sixty years old*, § 48  
nauta, 1, *sailor*  
nāvālis, e, 3, *naval, belonging to the navy*, § 39  
nāvigium, 2, *vessel, ship*, § 9  
nāvīgō, 1, *I sail* [navigate], § 23  
nāvis (Gen. Plur. nāvium), 3, *ship*, § 11; nāvis longa, *ship of war*, § 36; nāvis aëria, *balloon*, § 50  
-ne marks a question, § 16, § 21  
nō, *not* (in expressions of desire), § 49; *lest or that . . . not*, § 52  
nō . . . quidem, *not even . . .*, § 12  
nebula, 1, *cloud*, § 50  
nec, *nor, and not*, § 2  
nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor*, § 12  
necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*, § 1 (Dat.—*for*, § 16)

ne-sciō, 4, *I do not know*, § 41  
nexus, 4, *bond* [con-nexion], § 56  
nidus, 2, *nest*, § 44  
nihil, *nothing*, § 2; nihil litterārum, *no letter*, § 43  
nimis, *too*, § 18  
nisi, *unless, if . . . not*, § 37; *except*  
nōbīs, *to us*, § 6  
nobiscum, *with us*, § 18  
noctū, *by night, in the night-time*, § 51  
nōmen (-min-), 3, *name* [nominal], § 3; *reputation*, § 48; *race* (nōmen Britannicum), § 48  
nōminō, 1, *I name, call*, § 3  
nōn, *not*, § 2  
nōndum, *not yet*, § 5  
nōn iam, *no longer, not any longer*  
nōnne (=nōn+ne), *not?* § 16  
nonnulli, ae, a, *some* [nōn, not, nulli, none], § 1  
nōnnumquam, *sometimes* (lit. *not never*), § 50  
Nōnae, 1, plur., *Nones* (from nōnus, a, um; lit. *the ninth day before the Ides*, according to the Roman method of reckoning; the fifth or seventh day of the month), § 39  
nōnāgēsīmus, a, um, *ninetieth*, § 25  
nōnus, a, um, *ninth*, § 10  
nōs, *we or us, ourselves*, § 1  
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*, § 1;  
nostrī, m. plur., *our men*, § 38  
nōtītia, 1, *knowledge*, § 25



nōtus, a, um, *known*, § 19  
**novem** (indeclinable), *nine*, § 6  
**November**, *bris, bre*, 3, of *November*, § 38  
**novus**, a, um, *new*, § 4; *quid novi*, § 31; *aliquid novi*, § 37;  
*nihil novi*, § 49; *novae res*, *revolution*, § 35  
**nox** (noct-) 3, *night*, § 13; *noctēs diēsque*, *day and night*, § 43  
**nūdātus**, a, um, *denuded, stripped*, § 8  
**nūdō**, 1, *I strip, denude* (Abl. —of), § 8, § 47  
**nūdus**, a, um, *naked, bare*, § 50

nullus, a, um (Gen. Sing. nullius, Dat. nulli), *not any, no*, § 8  
**num**, *whether*, marking a question, § 8  
**numerus**, 2, *number*, § 2  
**nummus**, 2, *coin*, § 1  
**numquam**, *never*, § 8  
**nunc**, *now*, § 12  
**nuntiō**, 1, *I announce*, § 8; *report*, § 36  
**nuntius**, 2, *messenger* (**nuntius verbi divini**, *missionary*, § 25); *message*, § 41  
**nūper**, *recently, lately*, § 24  
**nusquam**, adv., *nowhere*, § 46

## O

oblivio (-iōn-), 3, *oblivion, forgetfulness*, § 2; *oblivioni dō*, *I consign to oblivion, I forget*, § 15  
**ob-ruō**, 3, -ruī, *I bury*, § 56  
**obscurō**, 1, *I obscure, darken*, § 50  
**obscurus**, a, um, *obscure, dark*, § 1, § 23  
**ob-sessus**, a, um, *besieged*, § 43 (heading)  
**ob-sideō**, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, a, um, *I besiege*, lit. *sit down against*, § 23  
**ob-sidiō** (-iōn-), 3, *siege*, § 50; *urbem obsidiōne liberō*, *I raise the siege of a town*, lit. *I free a town from siege*, § 44  
**ob-stō**, -stāre, -stīfī (with Dat.), *I stand against, resist*  
**ob-tineō**, 2, -tinui, -tentus, a, um, *I retain, maintain, keep hold of*, § 35. [The English word 'obtain' comes from obtineō, but does not mean the same; to 'obtain' generally = 'to get']  
**-occidens** (occident-), 3, *the West*, § 12  
**occidentālis**, e, 3, *western*, § 10  
**oc-cidō**, 3, -cidi, *I set* (used of the

sun, moon and stars; from ob- and cadō, *I fall*), § 49  
**occultō**, 1, *I hide*, § 5  
**occupō**, 1, *I seize* [occupy], § 5  
**octāvus**, a, um, *eighth* [octave], § 38  
**octingentesimus**, a, um, *eight hundredth*, § 56  
**octingenti**, ae, a, *eight hundred*  
**octō** (indeclinable), *eight*, § 44  
**Octōber**, *bris, bre*, 3, of *October*, § 31  
**octogēsīmus**, a, um, *eightieth*, § 56  
**octogintā**, *eighty*, § 9  
**oculus**, 2, *eye*, § 6; in oculis, *in sight*, § 22  
**odium**, 2, *hatred*, § 56  
**officiū**, 2, *duty*, § 56  
**olim**, adv., *long ago, in the olden time*, § 56  
**ōmen** (ōmin-), 3, *omen, sign* [omin-ous], § 8  
**omnia**, Neut. Plur. of omnēs, *all things, everything*  
**omnīnō** *altogether*, § 27  
**omnis**, 3, adj., *every*; Plur. omnēs, m. and f., *omnia*, n., *all*, § 3  
**opera**, 1, *attention, study*, § 1; *operam dō ut*, *I take pains that, I try to*, § 50

**oportet** (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Peri. oportuit), *it behoves, it befits*: **oportet me**, *I ought*, § 28

**oppidum**, 2, *town*, § 2

**opportūnē**, *fortunately, opportunely*, § 39

**oppugnō**, 1, *I attack*, § 9

**optimē**, *excellently, hurrah!* § 18

**optimus**, a, um, *best*, Superlative of bonus, a, um, § 15

**opus** (oper-), 3, *work* [operation], § 49

opus (with Abl.), *need*

quid opus, *what need*

**ōra**, 1, *shore, coast*, § 11

**Orangia**, 1, *the Orange Free State, the Orange River Colony*, § 37

**orbis**, 3, m., *circle* [orb]; **orbis terrarum**—*the world*, § 4

**ordō** (-din-), 3, m., *rank* [ordin-ary], § 8

**Ordovicēs**, 2, a tribe of North Wales, § 5

**oriens** (orient-), 3, *the East* [oriental], § 12

**origō** (origin-), 3, *origin*, § 19; *origine, by origin*, § 34

**oriundus**, a, um, *sprung*, § 6

**ornātus**, 4, *adornment, attire*, § 50

**ornātus**, a, um, *ornamented, dressed*, § 50

**ornō**, 1, *I equip, ad-orn*, § 7

**ostrea**, 1, *oyster*, § 31

**ovis** (Gen. Plur. ovium), 3, *sheep*, § 50

**ōvum**, 2, *egg*, § 51

## P

**pācātus**, a, um, *subdued, pacified*, § 12

**pācificus**, a, um, *peaceful, peace-giving* [pacific], § 56

**pācō**, 1, *I pacify, subdue*, § 10

**paene**, adv., *almost*, § 47

**paeninsula**, 1, *peninsula* (paene, *almost. insula, island*), § 24

**parātus**, a, um, *prepared, ready*, § 29

**parens** (parent-), 3, *parent*, § 21

**parō**, 1, *I prepare*, § 5; *prepare for*, § 41

**pars** (part-), 3, *part*, § 1

**parvus**, a, um, *small, little*, § 25

**passus**, 4, *pace, yard*, § 23

**pater** (patr-), 3, *father*, § 3

**patria**, 1, *country, fatherland*, § 8

**patrōclnium**, 2, *protection*, § 35; *protectorate*, § 56

**patruissimus**, a, um (comic superlative from patruus), *kindest*, § 17

**patruus**, 2, *uncle*, § 1; *Oom*, § 31

**pauci**, ae, a, *a few*, § 5; *few*, § 30

**paulatim**, adv., *gradually*, § 15

**paulum**, a *little*, § 22

**Paulus**, 2, *Paul*, § 27

**pavimentum**, 2, *pavement*, § 15

**pax** (pāc-), 3, *peace*, § 12

**peccō**, 1, *I sin*, § 27

**pedes** (pedit-), 3, *foot-soldier*, § 45

**pedester**, **tris**, **tre**, 3, *infantry* (used as an adj.), *pedestrian*, § 2

**pellō**, 3, **pepuli**, **pulsus**, a, um, *I drive, ex-pel*, § 35

**penātes** (Gen. penātium), 3, plur., *household gods—home*, § 8

**penetrō**, 1, *I penetrate*, § 2

**per** (with Acc.), *through*, § 11; *during*, § 1; *along*, § 24

**per-curro**, 3, **-eucurri** or **-curri**, *I overrun*, § 36

**per-dō**, 3, **-didī**, **-ditus**, a, um, *I destroy* [per-dition]; **aquam**

**perdō**, *I waste time* (lit. *water*), § 32

**peregrinus**, a, um, *foreign*, § 26

**peregrinus**, 2, *foreigner*, § 32

**periculōsus**, a, um, *perilous, dangerous*, § 48

**periculum**, 2, *peril, danger*, § 12

peritus, a, um, *skilled* (Gen. -in), § 11

per-noctō, *I spend the night*, § 16

perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, everlasting*, § 12

per-tinē, 2, -tinui, *I stretch, extend*, § 23; *pertinet ad*, it concerns, *pertains to*, § 32 (compare the word 'im-pertinent,' which properly means 'not pertaining to,' hence 'unbecoming')

perturbō, 1, *I throw into disorder*, § 46

per-veniō, 4, -vēni, *I arrive* (lit. *come through*), § 42

pēs (ped-), 3, m., *foot*, § 22; *pedibus*, on foot, § 45

Petreiūs collis, *Peters Hill*, North of the Tugela and to the South-East of Ladysmith, § 55

pharus, 2; f., *light-house*, § 23

Picti, 2, plur., *Picts*, § 19

pictus, a, um, *painted*; *tabula picta*, *picture*, § 1

piget (3rd pers. sing., 2nd Conj.; Perf. piguit), *it vexes*; *mē piget*, *it vexes me*, *I am sorry*, § 23; *mē nōn piget*, *I don't mind*, § 22

pila, 1, *ball* [pill], § 17; *cricket ball*, § 30

pius, a, um, *loving* [pious], § 56

plēnus, a, um, *full*, § 29; with Gen. § 56, with Abl. *filled*, § 50

plērumque, *mostly, generally*, § 1

plūrimus, a, um, *very much*, § 38 (Superlative of multus)

plūs (plūr-), *more* [hence 'Plural'], § 32

poēta, 1, *poet*, § 4

Pompōnia Graecina, wife of Aulus Plautius, § 27

pondus (ponder-), 3, *weight*, § 9

pōnō, 3, posui, *positus*, a, um, *I place* [position], § 40

pons (pont-), 3, m., *bridge*; *Pons Aelius*, *Newcastle*, § 20

pontifex (pontific-), 3, *pontiff*, *pope*, § 25

populus, 2, a *people*, § 6

porcus, 2, *pig* [pork], § 50

porta, 1, *gate* (of a city)

portentum, 2, *portent, marvel*, § 8

portō, 1, *I carry*, § 18

portus, 4, *port, harbour*, § 23;

Portus Nātālis, *Durban*, § 42

possum (-pot-sum), posse (-pot-esse), *potui*, *I am able*, § 3

post (with Acc.), *after*, § 1, *since*, § 48

postea, adv., *afterwards*, § 20

posterior (m., f.), posterius (n.), *later*, § 16

postquam, *after—after the time when*, § 2; *since*, § 25

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally*, § 53

postridiē, *on the next day*, § 13

prae-beō, 2, prae-bui, prae-bitus, a, um, *I provide, afford*, § 23

(-prae-hibeō, etc., from habeō, lit. *I hold forth*)

praecipitō, 1, *I hurl down* [precipitate], § 8; *praecipitans*, *knocking down*, § 39

praecipuē, adv., *chiefly, especially*, § 34

praecipuus, a, um, *chief, special, particular*, § 24

praecīlārus, a, um, *very famous, splendid*, § 12

praeda, 1, *prey, booty*, § 9

praefectus, 2, *officer* [prefect]; *president*, § 31; *governor of a colony*, § 36

prae-mitto, 3, -misi, -missus, a, um, *I send forward*, § 45

prae-nōmen (-nōmin-), 3, *forename, Christian name*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stiti, *I exhibit, show*, § 6; *render*, § 49

prae-sum, -esse, -fui (with Dat.), *I am in command (of), am at the head (of)*, § 3

Praetōria, 1, *Pretoria*, the capital of the Transvaal, § 56

prandium, 2, *lunch*, § 1  
 pretium, 2, *price*, § 50 (grandi pretiō, at a high price)  
 pridie, adv., *on the day before*, § 16 ; with Acc., § 42  
 primō, at first, § 13  
 primus, a, um, *first*, § 1  
 princeps (princip-), 3, *emperor*, § 2 ; *prince*, *chieftain*, § 15  
 principatus, 4, *headship*, *sovereignty*, § 35 ; *reign* (of a 'princeps'), § 27  
 principia, 2, plur., *headquarters*  
 prior (prior-), 3, *previous* [prior], § 5  
 prō (with Abl.), *instead of*, *for*, § 7 ; *for the sake of*, § 4  
 procella, 1, *storm* ; Mons Procellarum, *Stormberg*, in the north of Cape Colony, § 46  
 Promunturium Procellarum, *Cape of Storms*, the old name of the Cape of Good Hope, § 48  
 procul, *far*, § 22 ; *afar*, § 26  
 prō-currō, 3, -euerri or -curri, *I run forward*, *I charge*, § 38  
 proelium, 2, *battle*, § 5  
 pro-festus, a, um, *not holy*, *not festal* ; diēs profestus, *a working-day*, § 30  
 pro-fundō, 3, -fūdi, -fusus, a, um, *I pour out*, *shed* [profuse], § 54  
 pro-hibeō, 2, -hibui, -hibitus, a, um (from habeō ; lit. *I hold at a distance*), *I prohibit*, *forbid*, with Infin., § 26 ; *I prevent*, with Infin., § 36 ; with Abl. (—from), § 52 ; with nē, *lest*, *that*, § 52  
 prō-missum, 2, *promise*, § 26  
 prō-mittō, -misi, -missus, a, um, *I promise*, § 37

prō-munturium, 2, *promontory*, § 22 ; *cape*, § 41  
 prope (with Acc.), *near*, § 9, *nearly*, § 49  
 properō, 1, *I hasten*, § 49 ; *I go rapidly*, § 53 (different in meaning from festinō, *I hurry* —act without sufficient thought)  
 propior, propius, *nearer*, § 53  
 prōpositum, 2, *proposal*, § 18  
 propter (with Acc.), *on account of*, § 5  
 prōpulsō, 1, *I drive off*, *keep off*, *repel*, § 12  
 prosperē, *successfully*, *prosperously*, § 56  
 prosperus, a, um, *successful*, *prosperous*, § 30 ; rēs prosperae, *success*, *prosperity*, § 48  
 prō-sum, -esse, -fui (with Dat.), *I am helpful*, *do good*, § 48  
 prōverbium, 2, *proverb*, *familiar saying*, § 41  
 prōvincia, 1, *province*, § 10  
 proximus, a, um, *nearest*, *next*, § 11 ; *last*, *preceding*, § 39  
 pruīna, 1, *frost*, § 54  
 puer, 2, *boy*, § 17  
 pugna, 1, *fight*, *battle*, § 12  
 pugnans (pugnant-), 3, adj., *fighting*, § 56  
 pugnō, 1, *I fight*, § 4  
 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *fine*, *beautiful*, *glorious*, § 10  
 pulchrē, *beautifully*, *gloriously*  
 pulvis (pulver-), 3, m., *dust*, *cloud of dust*, § 51  
 punctum, 2, *point* [punct-ual] ; punctum temporis, *a moment*, § 46  
 puteus, 2, *well*, § 23 ; *pit*, § 43  
 putō, 1, *I fancy*, *think*, *suppose*, § 56

## Q

quadragēsimus, a, um, *fortieth*, § 3

quadragintā (indeclinable), *forty*, § 22

**quadrātus**, a, um, *square, four-cornered*, § 23; **agmine quadrātō**, in quarter column, § 45  
**quadringentesimus**, a, um, *four hundred*, § 24  
**quadringenſi**, ae, a, *four hundred*, § 22  
**quaesō**, 3, *I pray, or please (tell me)*, § 32  
**quaestiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *question, enquiry*, § 19  
**quam**, how, § 30; **as**; **than**, § 14  
**quamquam**, *although*, § 2  
**quandō**, *when*, § 18  
**quantopere**, *how much*, § 18  
**quantus**, a, um, *how great*, § 56; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, so great . . . **as**, § 48  
**quartus**, a, um, *fourth*, § 3  
**quartus decimus**, *fourteenth*, § 3  
**quattuor**, *four*, § 2  
**quattuordecim**, *fourteen*  
**quī, quae, quod**, *which? or what?*, § 19  
**quī, quae, quod**, *who, which*, § 20  
**quia**, *because*, § 1

**quī-dam, quae-dam, quod-dam**, *a certain*, § 35  
**quingentesimus**, a, um, *five hundred*, § 25  
**quingenti**, ae, a, *five hundred*, § 44  
**quingagēsimus**, a, um, *fiftieth*  
**quingagintā** (indecl.), *fifty*, § 20  
**quinque**, *five*, § 30  
**quintus**, a, um, *fifth*, § 7  
**quintus decimus**, *fifteenth*, § 3  
**quis** (m., f.), **quid** (n.), *who?*, *what?*, §§ 14, 15, 19; *anyone, anything*; **num quid**, *whether anything?*, § 31; **nō quid**, *lest anything*, § 52  
**quis-que, quae-que, quid-que** or **quod-que**, *each, each one*, § 56  
**quō**, *whither, to which*, § 42  
**quod**, *that*, § 23  
**quondam**, *once on a time, formerly*, § 22  
**quoque**, *too, also*, § 3  
**tum quoque**, *then too, even then*  
**quota hōra est?** *what o'clock is it?*, § 18  
**quotā hōrā**, *at what o'clock?*, § 18

## R

**re-belliō (-iōn-)**, 3, *renewal of war* [rebellion], § 8  
**re-bellō**, 1, *I renew war* [rebel], § 7  
**re-cipiō**, 3, **-cēpi**, **-ceptus**, a, um, *I belake (mē, myself)*, § 43; *I withdraw*, § 44; *I recover, I rescue*, § 47; *I receive*, § 56  
**recitō**, 1, *I read aloud* [recite], § 1  
**recreō**, 1, *I refresh (mē, myself)*, § 22  
**rectē**, *rightly*, § 16; *right!*, § 28  
**red-ambulō**, 1, *I walk back*, § 29  
**red-dō**, 3, **-didī**, **-ditus**, a, um, *I deliver* (lit. *I give back*; **red-re-**), § 38 (note); *I render*, § 54  
**re-ducō**, 3, **-dūxi**, **-ductus**, a, um, *I lead back* [reduce, reduction], § 39

**rēgīna**, 1, *queen*, § 3  
**regiō (-iōn-)**, 3, *region, district*, § 11  
**rēgius**, a, um, *royal*, § 31  
**regnō**, 1, *I reign*, § 3  
**regnum**, 2, *kingdom* [reign], § 3  
**reliquiae**, 1, pl., *relics, remains*, § 5  
**reliquus**, a, um, *the rest, the remaining*  
**remōtus**, a, um, *remote*, § 4  
**re-movēō**, 2, **-mōvi**, **-mōtus**, a, um, *I remove* [remote], § 27  
**re-portātus**, a, um, *carried off, won*, § 5  
**re-portō**, 1, *I carry off (or back)*, *win*, § 2  
**rēs**, 5, *thing, affair*, § 30; **rēs publica** (**rēspública**), *common-*

*wealth, republic*, § 31; **rē**  
**vērā** (*rēvērā*), *in reality*,  
*really*, § 32; **rēs** = *rēspública*,  
 § 49  
**re-scribō**, 3, **-scripsi**, **-scriptus**, a,  
 um, *I write back*, § 43  
**re-servō**, 1, *I reserve*, § 34  
**re-spondeō**, 2, **-spondi**, **-sponsus**,  
 a, um, *I answer, respond* [*re-*  
*sponse*], § 22  
**re-stituō**, 3, **-stitui**, **-stitutus**, a,  
 um, *I restore* [*restitution*],  
 § 49  
**re-surgō**, 3, **-surrexi**, *I rise again*  
*[resurrection]*, § 56  
**re-tardō**, 1, *I retard, delay, impede*  
*(from tardus, a, um, slow,*  
*tardy)*, § 6  
**rēvērā**, *really*, § 2 (or, as two  
 words, **rē vērā**, § 32)  
**re-vinciō**, 4, **-vixi**, **-vinetus**, a,  
 um, *I bind fast*, § 56

**re-vocō**, 1, *I recall* [*revoke*], § 28;  
*call off, withdraw*, § 15, § 28;  
*pick up, catch*, § 17  
**rex** (*rēg-*), 3, *king*, § 3  
**Rhēnus**, 2, *the Rhine*, § 33  
**rideō**, 2, **risi**, *I laugh*, § 22, § 24  
**ripa**, 1, *bank*, § 44  
**ritus**, 4, *manner* [*rite*], § 56  
**rōbur** (*rōbor-*), 3, *oak, strength*, § 36  
**rōbustus**, a, um, *robust, sturdy*,  
 § 33  
**rogō**, 1, *I ask*, § 52  
**Rōma**, 1, *Rome*, § 5  
**Rōmānus**, a, um, *Roman*, § p off.  
**rufus**, a, um, *reddish*  
*'William Rufus']*, § 3 *asper*  
**ruinae**, 1, pl., *ruins*, § 18  
**Rutupiae**, 1, pl., *Richborough*,  
 § 18  
**Rutupinus**, a, um, *belonging to*  
*Richborough*, § 18

## S

**sacer**, *sacra, sacrum, sacred*, § 27  
**saeculum**, 2, *century*, § 16  
**saepe**, *often*, § 1  
**saevus**, a, um, *savage, cruel*, § 12  
**saltus**, 4, *mountain-pass*, § 46;  
*Saltus Cervinus, Elands-laagte*  
*(= Stag's lair), in the North*  
*of Natal*, § 38  
**salūs** (**salūt-**), 3, *health, welfare*;  
**salūtem dicō**, *I send greeting*,  
 § 37; *deliverance*, § 53; **annō**  
**salūtis** *in the year of grace*, § 56  
**salūtō**, 1, *I salute, greet*, § 56  
**salvēō**, 2, *I am safe and sound, I*  
*am in good health*; **salvē**  
*(plur. salvēte)*, *hail!*, § 22  
**salvus**, a, um, *safe and sound*;  
**salvum praestō**, *I render safe*  
*and sound, I save*, § 49, § 50;  
**salvus sis**, *may you be safe*  
*and sound!—God bless you!*,  
 § 51

**sanctus**, a, um, *holy*, § 27; **Sanctus**,  
 2, *Saint*, § 23  
**sanguis** (**sanguin-**), 3, m., *blood*  
*[sanguin-ary, con-sanguinity]*  
 § 34  
**satiō**, 1, *I satisfy*, § 12  
**satis**, *enough*, § 2; *sufficiently*,  
*pretty well*, § 17  
**Saxō** (**Saxon-**), 3, *Saxon*, § 24  
**schola**, 1, *school*, § 40; pl., *lessons*,  
 § 1  
**scientia**, 1, *science, knowledge*,  
 § 9  
**sciō**, 4, **scīvi**, *I know*, § 41; **vincere**  
**sciō**, *I know how to conquer*,  
 § 51  
**Scōtus**, 2, *Scot*, § 19  
**scribō**, 3, **scripsi**, **scriptus**, a, um,  
*I write* [*scripsi* = a thing writ-  
 ten; scribe = a writer, law-  
 yer], § 32  
**scriptor** (**scriptōr-**), 3, *writer*, § 3

sē, *himself, herself, itself*, § 9;  
*themselves*, § 11; inter sē,  
*among themselves*

Secundus, a, um, *second*, § 2

sed, *but*, § 2

sedēō, 2, sedī, *I sit*, § 22

Segedūnum, s, *Wall's End* (=End  
of the Roman Wall), § 20

sēmi-hōra, i, *half an hour* (sēmi-  
=half, as in 'semicircle,'  
'semicolon,' etc.), § 49

sēmi-somnus, a, um, *half-asleep*  
(sēmi-, half; somnus, sleep),  
§ 49

semper, adv., *always*, § 24

senex (sen-em, -is, -ī, -e, etc.),  
*old man*, § 17

sententia, i, *sentence*

sēparō, i, *I separate*, § 4

septem (indecl.), *seven*, § 5

September, bris, bre, 3, *of Septem-  
ber*, § 1

septentrionalis, e, 3, *northern*, § 10

septentrionēs, 3, plur., m., *the  
North* (properly, the seven  
stars of Charles' Wain), § 39

septimus, a, um, *seventh*, § 6

septimus decimus, *seventeenth*, § 51

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*,  
§ 46

septuagintā, *seventy*, § 9

sepulchrum, 2, *tomb, sepulchre*,  
§ 56

serēnus, a, um, *clear* [serene], § 18

sermō (sermōn-), 3, *speech, con-  
versation, talk* [sermon], § 26

sērō, *late, too late*, § 41

servitūs (servitūt-), 3, *slavery*,  
*servitude*, § 2

servō, i, *I preserve, keep, watch*,  
§ 9

servus, 2, *slave*, § 7

sescentī (for sex-centī), ae, a, *six  
hundred*, § 55

sexāgēsīmus, a, um, *sixtieth*, § 7

sexāgintā (indecl.), *sixty*, § 22

sextus, a, um, *sixth*, § 11

sī, *if*, § 6

sic, *so, thus*, § 9; as follows, § 22

sicut, as (lit. *so as, just as*), § 33

significātiō (-iōn-), 3, *signification*,  
*meaning*

significō, i, *I signify, mean*, § 24;  
*I express*, § 53

signum, 2, sign, § 13; *flag*,  
*standard*, § 11; *badge*, § 34

silentium, 2, *silence*, § 13

sileō, 2, silui, *I am silent*; passive,

silētur, *it is silenced*, § 30

Silurēs, 3, *Silures*, a tribe of South  
Wales, § 5

silva, i, *wood, forest*, § 5

simulācrum, 2, *image*, § 7, § 27

sine (with Abl.), *without*, § 18

singularis, e, 3, *singular, strange*,  
*unique*, § 37

sinister, tra, trum, *left* [sinister],  
§ 44

situs, a, um, *situated*, § 22

societās (-tāt-), 3, *alliance, society*,  
*union*, § 34; Societās Africāna,  
*Africander Bond*, § 35

socius, 2, *ally*, § 56

sōl, 3, *the sun*, § 49

sōlitūdō (-tūdīn-), 3, *solitude*,  
*desert*, § 12

solitus, a, um, *usual*, § 51 (solitō  
*densior, denser than usual*)

solum, 2, *soil*, § 23

sōlum, only; nōn sōlum . . . sed  
etiam, *not only . . . but also*,  
§ 16

sōlus, a, um, (Gen. Sing. sōlius,  
Dat. Sing. sōli), *alone*, § 56

somnium, 2, *dream*, § 35

somnus, 2, *sleep*, § 43

spectāculum, 2, *spectacle, show*,  
§ 6; *sight*, § 29

spectō, i, *I look, watch, gaze at*,  
*see*, § 6

spērō, i, *I hope*, § 12

spēs, 5, *hope*, § 41; *promise*, § 47

spiritus, 4, *pride, airs* [spirit],  
§ 35

stabilitās (-tāt-), 3, *stability, stead-  
fastness*, § 45

**statim**, adv., *immediately, at once*, § 18  
**statio** (-iōn-), 3, *station, sentry-duty*, § 51; **Statio** Bechuān-  
 arum, *Mafeking*, in Bechuana-  
 land, § 43  
**stō**, *stāre, steti*, 1, *I stand*, § 8  
**studeō**, 2, **studui**, *I am eager* (Dat.  
 -for), § 35  
**studium**, 2, *eagerness, study, pur-  
 suit*, § 15; plur. *studia,  
 studies*, § 1  
**stultitia**, 1, *jolly*, § 37  
**sub** (with Abl.), *under*, § 11, *down  
 in*; (with Acc.), *down into,  
 down to, down along*, § 23;  
*towards*, § 38  
**subiectus**, a, um, *subject*, § 3  
**subitō**, *suddenly*, § 39  
**subministrō**, 1, *I supply*, § 4  
**subterrāneus**, a, um, *subterranean,  
 underground*, § 23  
**Suebī**, 2, plur., *Swabians*, § 24  
**Suētōnius Paulinus**, 2, a Roman  
 general of the time of Nero,  
 § 7

**Suētōnius Tranquillus**, 2, a Roman  
 writer of the second century  
 A.D., § 3  
**sum**, *esse, fui*, *I am*, § 1  
**summus**, a, um, *highest, chief*,  
 § 10; *very great*, § 48  
**sūmō**, 3, **sumpsi**, **sumptus**, a, um,  
*I assume, take*, § 35; *I under-  
 take*, § 56  
**super** (with Acc.), *over, above*, § 46  
**superior** (**superiōr-**), 3, comp. adj.,  
*previous, past; superior, vic-  
 torious*  
**superō**, 1, *I overcome*, § 5; *I sur-  
 pass, am superior*, § 9; *I sur-  
 mount*, § 44  
**superstitiō** (-iōn-), 3, *superstition*,  
 § 27  
**sus-tineō**, 2, -**tinui**, -**tentus**, a, um,  
*I sustain, endure*, (from sub-  
 and teneō), § 54  
**suus**, a, um, *his (or his own), her (or  
 her own), its (or its own), their  
 (or their own)*, § 2; *sui, his  
 (or their) men*, § 9, § 13

## T

**tabula**, 1, *tablet, plate*; **tabula  
 picta**, *picture*, § 1  
**Tacitus**, 2, a Roman historian, § 1  
**Talāna**, 1, a hill near Dundee, in  
 Natal, § 38  
**tam**, so, § 43  
**tamen**, *nevertheless, however*, § 1  
**Tamesa**, 1, m., *Thames*, § 2;  
 Caesar calls the river 'Tame-  
 sis' (3rd Decl.), but Tacitus  
 calls it 'Tamesa' (1st Decl.)  
**Tanatis** (Acc. **Tanatim**; Abl.  
**Tanati**), 3, *Thanet*, § 24  
**tandem**, *at length*, § 5  
**tantum**, *so much, or only*, § 8, § 24  
**tantus**, a, um, *so great*, § 4  
**Tasclōvānus**, 2, a British king, § 3  
**Tasmania**, 1, *Tasmania*, § 49

**tē**, *thee, you*; **tēcum**, *with thee,  
 with you*  
**templum**, 2, *temple*, § 7  
**tempus** (tempor-), 3, *time* [tempor-  
 ary], § 2; *ad tempus, at the  
 right time, in time*, § 22; *in  
 ipso tempore, in the nick o  
 time*, § 39  
**tenebrae**, 1, plur., *darkness*, § 39;  
 Rex **Tenebrarum**, *the Devil*,  
 § 28  
**teneō**, 2, **tenui**, **tentus**, a, um,  
*I hold*, § 23  
**ter**, adv., *three times, thrice*, § 54  
**terra**, 1, *land*, § 4  
**terribilis**, e, 3, *terrible*, § 38  
**terror** (**terrōr-**), 3, *terror, panic*,  
 § 39



tertius, a, um, *third*, § 2  
 tertius decimus, *thirteenth*, § 2  
 tessellātus, a, um, *tessellated, made of mosaic work*, § 15 (from tessella, a small cube)  
 testimonium, a, um, 2, *testimony, evidence*, § 10  
 Tiberius, 2, *Tiberius, the second Roman emperor*, § 2  
 Togodumnus, 2, a son of Cunobelinus, § 3  
 tolerō, i, I *tolerate, endure, bear*, § 2  
 tonitrus, 4, m., *thunder*, § 46  
 tormentum, 2, *hurling machine, gun*, § 38  
 tot (indeclin. adj.), *so many*, § 49  
 tōtus, a, um (Gen. Sing. tōtius, Dat. Sing. tōti), *whole*, § 4  
 trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditus, a, um, I *hand down, lit. give across [tradition]*, § 56  
 trahō, 3, traxi, tractus, a, um, I *drag, draw*, § 39 [traction engine]  
 trāiciō (= trā-iciō), 3, -iēcī, -iectus, a, um, I *throw across*, § 44; I *cross*, § 54  
 trans (with Acc.), *across*, § 11  
 transportō, i, I *transport*, § 2  
 trecenti, ae, a, *three hundred*, § 46  
 tredecim (indecl.), *thirteen*, § 25  
 tremō, 3, tremui, I *tremble*, § 38  
 trēs (m., f.), tria (n.), Gen. trium; Dat., Abl. tribus; *three*, § 13, § 30  
 tributum, 2, *tribute*, § 2  
 tricesimus, a, um, *thirtieth*, § 6  
 triellinium, 2, *dining-room*

trīgintā (indecl.), *thirty*, § 22  
 trigōn, 3, m. (a Greek word), *ball, tennis ball*, § 30  
 trigōnālis, e, of (or connected with) *the tennis ball*, § 1  
 Trinobantēs, 3, plur., a tribe in Essex, § 7  
 triplex (triplic-), 3, adj., *triple*, § 36  
 Trisantonā, i, m., *the Trent*; see map of *Britannia Romana*. The form 'Trisantonā' is uncertain, depending on the reading of a passage in Tac. Ann., xii. 31  
 tristis, e, 3, *sad*, § 30; *bitter*, § 56  
 triumphālis, e, 3, *triumphal*, § 55  
 triumphō, i, I *triumph, exult*, § 9  
 trucidātiō (-iōn-), 3, *slaughter*, § 13  
 trucidō, i, I *slaughter, murder*, § 7  
 tū, thou, you (Sing.), § 17  
 Tugēla, i, m., *the Tugela, a river in Natal*, § 47  
 tum, then (=at that time or there-upon), § 6  
 tumultus, 4, *tumult*, § 38  
 tumulus, 2, *rising ground, kopje*, § 44  
 turbulentus, a, um, *turbulent, unsettled*, § 10; Flūmen Turbulentum, *the Modder River (in the Orange River Colony: 'Modder'—mud)*, § 44  
 turpis, e, 3, *disgraceful*, § 56  
 turris (Gen. Plur. turrium), 3, *tower, turret*, § 22  
 tūtus, a, um, *safe*, § 12  
 tuus, a, um, *thy, your*

## U

ubi, *where*, § 1  
 ullus, a, um, *any* (Gen. Sing. ullius, Dat. Sing. ulli)  
 ultimus, a, um, *last [ultimate]*, § 1; litterae ultimae, *a final despatch—an ultimatum*, § 37

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*, § 14  
 unā, together; unā cum, *together with*, § 6  
 unda, i, *wave*, § 36  
 unde, *whence*, § 26

**undecim** (indecl.), *eleven*, § 13  
**undecimus**, a, um, *eleventh*  
**undetricesimus**, a, um, *twenty-ninth*, § 33  
**undeviginti** (indecl.), *nineteen*, § 52  
**undique**, adv., *on all sides*, § 39  
**universus**, a, um, *all together* [universal]  
**ūnus**, a, um (Gen. Sing. *ūnius*, Dat. Sing. *ūni*), *one*, § 5

**urbs** (urb-), 3, *city* [urban], § 5  
**usque ad**, *right on to*, § 11  
**ūsus**, 4, *use*, § 23 (*ūsui*)  
**ut**, *how*, § 22, § 31; *as*, § 3; *ut* possum, *as best I can*, § 38  
 § 46, with the Subjunctive *that, in order that*, § 50; *so that*, § 50  
**ūtilis**, e, 3, *useful*, § 15  
**uxor** (uxōr-), 3, *wife*, § 6

## V

**vacca**, 1, *cow*, § 50  
**vadum**, 2, *shallow place, shoal, ford, 'drijt'*, § 41  
**Vahalis**, 3, m., *Vaal* (a river in Holland and in South Africa), § 32  
**valeō**, 2, *valui*, *I fare well, am in good health, am strong*; *valēre iubeō*, *I bid farewell* (lit. *to fare well*), § 23; *valē* (plur. *valēte*), *farewell*, § 30; *ut valēs?* *how do you do?*, § 31; *multum valet*, *avails much*, § 34  
**validus**, a, um, *strong*, § 49  
**vallum**, 2, *rampart, earthen wall*, § 20  
**vastō**, 1, *I lay waste* [de-vast-ate], § 7  
**vastus**, a, um, *wild, waste* [vast]  
**Vectis**, 3, (Acc. Sing., *Vectim*; Abl. Sing., *Vecti*), *Isle of Wight*, § 15  
**vehiculum**, 2, *carriage* [vehicle], *cart*, § 9  
**vel**, or, § 1  
**velut**, *as, even as, as it were* [vel even; ut, as], § 11  
**venerābilis**, e, 3, *venerable*, § 27  
**venia**, 1, *pardon, mercy*, § 6  
**veniō**, 4, *venī*, *I come*, § 40  
**Venta Belgarum**, 1, *Winchester*, § 34  
**vēnum-dō**, -dare, -dedī, *I sell*, § 2  
 [vēnum, *for sale*; dō, *I offer*]

**verbum**, 2, *word*, § 11, § 25; *suis verbis*—*in his name*, § 52  
**vērē**, adv., *truly*, § 6  
**Vergilius**, 2 (*Publius Vergilius Marō*), a Roman poet of the age of Augustus, § 4  
**vērius**, compar. adv., *more truly*, § 56  
**verō**, but; *but in truth*, § 42  
**versus**, 4, *verse*, § 38  
**vertō**, 3, *verti*, **versus**, a, um, *I turn*; *bene vertat*, *may it turn out well*, § 56  
**Verulamium**, 2, *St. Albans*, in Hertfordshire, twenty miles from London  
**vērus**, a, um, *true*, § 10; *vēra*, *the truth* (lit. *true things*), § 11; *vērō*, *in truth*, § 42  
**vesper**, 2, *evening*, § 30 [vespers]  
**vester**, *vestra*, *vestrum*, *your* (of several persons), § 12  
**vestibulum**, 2, *vestibule, entrance hall*  
**vestimentum**, 2, *garment* [vestment], § 50  
**veterānus**, 2, *veteran, old soldier*, § 5  
**vexillum**, 2, *standard, flag*, § 38  
**vexō**, 1, *I annoy, vex*, § 2  
**via**, 1, *road, way*, § 1; *dē viā*, *from the road*; *in viam mē dō*, *I give myself to the road*, *I start*, § 18; *inter viam*, *on the journey*, § 19

**vicēsimus**, a, um, *twentieth*, § 39  
**victitō**, 1, *I live*, § 50  
**victor** (victōr-), 3, *victor*, § 14  
**victōria**, 1, *victory*, § 2  
**Victōriānus**, a, um, *Victorian*;  
 crux **Victōriāna**, *the Victoria*  
*Cross*, instituted by Queen  
 Victoria for conspicuous  
 bravery, § 56  
**victrix** (victrie-), 3, adj., fem.,  
*victorious*, § 5  
**videō**, 2, vidī, vīsus, a, um, *I see*,  
 § 22; videō nē, *I see to it*  
*that . . . not*, § 52, § 56  
**vīginti** (indeclinable), *twenty*, § 22  
**villa**, 1, *country-house, villa*, § 15  
**vineō**, 3, vici, victus, a, um, *I*  
*conquer, defeat*, § 35  
**vir**, 2, man, § 2  
**Virocōnium**, 2, *Uxiconium* (*Wrox-*  
*eter*), near Shrewsbury, § 5  
**virtūs** (virtūt-), 3, *pluck, courage*  
*[virtue]*, § 4

**vis**, 3, Acc. vim, § 54; Abl. vi,  
 § 50, *violence, force*; Plur.  
 vir-ēs, -um, -ibus, *strength*  
**visitō**, 1, *I visit*, § 1  
**vita**, 1, *life*, § 1, *Vita Agricolae*,  
*the Life of Agricola*, a work  
 by Tacitus  
**vitō**, 1, *I avoid*, § 15  
**vix**, *scarcely, hardly*, § 43  
**vōbīs**, *to you*; vōbiscum, *with you*  
**vocans** (vocant-), 3, *calling*, § 42  
**vocō**, 1, *I call*, § 4; *I summon*,  
 § 8  
**volō**, 1, *I fly*, § 9  
**voluntārius**, 2, *volunteer* [volun-  
 tary], § 49  
**vōs** (Nōm. and Acc.), *you*, § 6  
**vox** (vōc-), 3, *voice*, § 49  
**vulnerō**, 1, *I wound*, § 13; vul-  
 nerātus, a, um, *wounded*, § 38  
**vulnus** (vulner-), 3, *wound* [vulner-  
 able], § 54

## Z

**Zelanda**, 1, *Zealand*; 'Nova  
 Zeelanda' was the name

given by Tasman to *New*  
*Zealand*, § 49

## II. ENGLISH-LATIN

Nearly all the words contained in the Exercises have occurred in previous passages of the text of *Pro Patria* and ought therefore to be familiar to the pupil. The object of this Vocabulary is simply to put him on the track of the word, if he has forgotten it: and, accordingly, the minimum of information is given here. In the case of a few words, however, introduced from *Ora Maritima* or not appearing in either book, the declension or conjugation is indicated.

able; I am—, <i>possum</i> to be—, <i>posse</i> .	army, <i>exercitus</i>	betake oneself, <i>se recipere</i>
about (Prep.), <i>dē</i> ;	around, <i>circum</i>	better, <i>melior, melius</i>
(Adv.) <i>circiter</i>	arrival, <i>adventus</i>	between, <i>inter</i>
accordingly, <i>itaque</i>	arrive, <i>adventāre</i> , or <i>advenire</i> (after § 41)	bid, <i>iubeō</i>
accuse, <i>accūsāre</i>	as, <i>ut</i> , or <i>sicut</i>	big, <i>magnus</i>
across, <i>trans</i>	ascend, <i>ascendere</i>	black, <i>niger</i>
admit, <i>admittere</i>	at once, <i>statim</i>	blue, <i>caeruleus</i>
adorn, <i>ornāre</i>	at the present day, <i>hodiē</i>	body (=troop), <i>manus</i>
affirm, <i>affirmāre</i>	attack, <i>impetus</i>	Boer, <i>Batāvus</i>
afraid, to be, <i>formi-</i> <i>dāre</i>	attack, to, <i>oppugnāre</i>	book, <i>liber</i>
after (Prep.), <i>post</i> ;	attendant, <i>minister</i>	booty, <i>praeda</i>
(—after the time when), <i>postquam</i>	attention, <i>opera</i>	born, <i>nātus</i>
afterwards, <i>postea</i>	August, <i>Augustus</i>	boundaries, <i>finēs</i>
against, <i>contrā</i>	aunt, <i>amita</i>	boy, <i>puer</i>
age, <i>aetās</i>	avoid, <i>vītāre</i>	brave, <i>fortis</i>
air, <i>aēr</i>	await, <i>expectāre</i>	bravo, <i>eugē</i>
all, <i>omnēs</i>	away, to be, <i>abesse</i>	breakfast, <i>ientāculum</i>
already, <i>iam</i>	ball, <i>pila</i>	bring up, <i>apportāre</i>
also, <i>etiam</i> ; but also, <i>sed etiam</i>	balloon, <i>nāvis aëria</i>	Britain, <i>Britannia</i>
although, <i>quamquam</i>	barbarians, <i>barbari</i>	British, <i>Britannicus</i>
always, <i>semper</i>	barbarous, <i>barbarus</i>	Briton, <i>Britannus</i>
among, <i>in numerō</i>	baths, <i>balneae</i>	brother, <i>frāter</i>
(with gen.), or <i>inter</i>	battalion, <i>cohors</i>	build, to, <i>aedificāre</i>
amphitheatre, <i>amphi-</i> <i>theātrum</i>	battle, <i>proelium</i>	building, <i>aedificium</i>
ancient, <i>antiquus</i>	be, to, <i>esse</i>	burn, to, <i>cremāre</i>
angel, <i>angelus</i>	beautiful, <i>pulcher</i>	but, <i>sed</i>
angle, <i>angulus</i>	because, <i>quia</i>	Caledonian (adj.), <i>Calē-</i> <i>donius</i>
Angles, <i>Angli</i>	before, <i>ante</i>	Caledonians, the, <i>Calē-</i> <i>donēs</i>
Annals, <i>Annālēs</i>	begin, <i>incipere</i>	call, to, <i>vocāre</i>
annoy, <i>vexāre</i>	beginning, <i>initium</i>	calm, <i>tranquillus</i>
another, <i>alius, alia,</i> <i>aliud</i> , or <i>alter, a, um</i>	behoves, it, <i>oportet</i>	camp, <i>castra</i>
answer, <i>respondere</i>	Belgian, <i>Belga</i>	can, I, <i>possum</i>
any longer, <i>iam</i>	Belgium, <i>Belgium</i>	cannon, <i>tormentum</i>
arms, <i>arma</i>	bell, <i>tintinnābulum</i>	cape, <i>promunturium</i>
	beloved, <i>cāriissimus</i>	capital, <i>caput</i>
	besiege, <i>obsidēre</i>	captive, <i>captivus</i>
	best, <i>optimus</i>	

capture, *captāre*  
 carry off, *deportāre*  
 cause, *causa*  
 cavalry, *equester* (adj.)  
 Celts, *Celtæ*  
 century, *saeculum*  
 channel, *fretum*  
 chapter, *caput*  
 charge, to, *prōcurrere*  
 chariot, *essedum*  
 cheerful, *hilarus*  
 chief, *summus*  
 children, *liberī*  
 Christ, *Christus*  
 Christian, *Christiānus*  
 church, *basilica*  
 Cicero, *Cicerō* (*Cicerōn-*)  
 citizen, *civis*  
 citizenship, *civitas*  
 city, *urbs*  
 civil war, *bellum domesticum*  
 civilized, *hūmānus*  
 climb up, *ascendere*  
 cloak, *chlamys* (*chlamyd-*), 3  
 cloud of dust, *pulvis*  
 coast, *litus*  
 cohort, *cohors*  
 coin, *nummus*  
 Colchester, *Camulodūnum*  
 collect, *colligō*  
 colonel, *praefectus*  
 colony, *colonia*  
 come, *venire*  
 command, *imperium*  
 command, to be in, *prae-esse* (of, Dat.)  
 commander, *imperātor*  
 commander in chief, *imperātor summus*  
 commerce, *mercātūra*, 1  
 compel, *cogere*  
 conquer, *vincere*  
 conquered, *dēbellātus*  
 conqueror, *victor*

conversation, *sermō*  
 cost, to, *constāre*  
 cottage, *casa*  
 country (=native land), *patria*  
 country house, *villa*  
 courage, *audācia*  
 course, *cursus*  
 coward, *ignāvus*  
 cowardly, *ignāvus*  
 create, *creare*  
 cross, to, *trāscere*  
 cruel, *crūdēlis*  
 cube, *tessella*, 1  
 danger, *periculum*  
 dangerous, *periculōsus*  
 daughter, *filia*  
 day, *diēs*  
 dear, *cārus*  
 death, *mors*  
 December, *December*  
 declare, *dēclārāre* or *affirmāre*; declare war, *bellum indicere*  
 defeat, *superāre* or *vincere* (after § 38)  
 defend, *dēfendere*  
 defender, *dēfensor*  
 delight, *dēlectāmentum*  
 delight, to, *dēlectāre*  
 desire, to, *cupere*  
 desirous, *cupidus*  
 destroy, *dēlēre*  
 devastate, *vastāre*  
 die, *expirāre*  
 difficult, *difficilis*  
 dig, *fodere*  
 dig up, *excavāre*  
 dining room, *triclinium*, 2  
 disaster, *clādēs*  
 distant, *remōtus*; to be—, *distāre*  
 distinguished, *insignis* or *clārus*  
 divide, *dividere*  
 do, *facere*

dog, *catulus*  
 drive, *pellere*  
 drive off, *prōpulsāre*  
 during, *inter* or *per*  
 Dutch, *Batāvus*  
 dwell, *habitāre*  
 earth, *terra*  
 east, *oriens*  
 eastern, *orientālis*  
 easy, *facilis*  
 egg, *ovum*  
 eight, *octō*  
 eight hundredth, *octingentesimus*  
 eighth, *octāvus*  
 eighty, *octogintā*  
 eleventh, *undecimus*  
 else, *alius, alia, aliud*  
 embroidered, *pictus, a, um*  
 emperor, *princeps*  
 empire, *imperium*  
 end, *finis*  
 endure, *tolerāre*  
 enemy, *hostis*  
 enroll, *conscribere*  
 enter, *intrāre*  
 entrust, *mandāre*  
 even, *etiam*  
 ever (=always), *umquam; semper*  
 every day, *cotidiē*  
 exclaim, *exclāmāre*  
 expectation, *expectatiō*  
 expedition, *expeditiō*  
 eye, *oculus*  
 face, *faciēs*  
 faithful, *fidus*  
 famous, *celeber*  
 far, *procul*  
 farewell, *valē*  
 farm, *agellus*  
 fashion, *modus*  
 fate, *fortūna*  
 father, *pater*  
 fatherland, *patria*

fear, to, <i>formidāre</i>	Gaul, <i>Gallia</i>	hurry, <i>festināre</i>
few, a few, <i>pauci</i>	general, <i>dux</i>	if, <i>si</i>
fifth, <i>quintus</i>	German, <i>Germānus</i>	image, <i>simulacrum</i>
fifty, <i>quingquagintā</i>	Germanic, <i>Germānicus</i>	immense, <i>ingens</i>
fifty-fifth, <i>quintus et quingquagesimus</i>	Germany, <i>Germānia</i>	implore, <i>implorāre</i>
fight, <i>pugnāre</i>	give, <i>dare</i>	in order that, <i>ut</i>
fine, <i>pulcher</i>	glass vessels, <i>vitrea</i> , 2	in the house of, <i>apud</i>
fire, <i>ignis</i>	glorious, <i>clārus</i>	infantry, <i>pædestes</i> (adj.)
first, <i>primus</i>	glory, <i>glōria</i>	inhabit, <i>incolere</i>
five, <i>quinque</i>	god, <i>deus</i>	inhabitant, <i>incola</i>
flag, <i>vexillum</i>	good, <i>bonus</i>	inhuman, <i>inhūmānus</i>
fleet, <i>classis</i>	gradually, <i>paulatim</i>	injury, <i>iniūria</i>
folly, <i>stultitia</i>	great, <i>magnus</i>	into, <i>in</i> , with Acc.
food, <i>cibus</i>	greater, <i>māior</i> , <i>māius</i>	Irish, <i>Hibernicus</i>
foot, <i>pēs</i>	greatly, <i>magnopere</i>	island, <i>insula</i>
football, <i>foliis</i>	grief, <i>dolor</i>	Isle of Thanet, <i>Insule Tanatis</i>
for, <i>nam</i> or <i>enim</i>	guard, <i>custodire</i>	Isle of Wight, <i>Insule Vectis</i>
for the sake, <i>causā</i>	gun, <i>tormentum</i>	
forbid, <i>prohibere</i>	hall, <i>ātrium</i>	January, <i>Iānuārius</i>
forces, <i>cōpiæ</i>	hand, <i>manus</i>	jolly, <i>bellus</i>
foreigner, <i>peregrinus</i>	happy, <i>fēlix</i> ( <i>fēlic-</i> ), 3	just, <i>iustus</i>
forename, <i>prænōmēn</i>	harbour, <i>portus</i>	Jutland, <i>paeni Cimbrica</i>
form, <i>forma</i>	hasten, <i>properare</i>	
fortieth, <i>quadrāgesimus</i>	have, <i>habere</i>	
fortify, <i>mūnīre</i>	hear, <i>audire</i>	
torty, <i>quadrāgintā</i>	help, <i>auxilium</i> , 2	keen, <i>acer</i>
forum, <i>forum</i>	high, <i>altus</i>	keeper, <i>custos</i>
found, <i>condere</i>	hill, <i>collis</i> , m.	Kent, <i>Cantium</i>
foundation, <i>fundāmentum</i>	himself (Accus.), <i>sē</i>	kill, <i>interficere</i> (§ 43)
four, <i>quattuor</i>	history, <i>historia</i>	Kimberley, <i>Adamanto polis</i>
fourteenth, <i>quartus decimus</i>	hold, <i>tenere</i> or <i>habere</i> ( <i>sermōnem</i> )	kind, <i>benignus</i>
fourth, <i>quartus</i>	holidays, <i>fēriæ</i>	king, <i>rex</i>
fowl, <i>gallina</i>	home, <i>domus</i> ; = home-wards, to home, <i>domum</i>	kingdom, <i>regnum</i>
France, <i>Francogallia</i>	hope, <i>spēs</i>	kitchen, <i>culina</i> , 1
free, <i>liber</i>	hope, to, <i>spērāre</i>	know, <i>scire</i>
freedom, <i>libertās</i>	horse-flesh, <i>carō equina</i>	knowledge, <i>nōititia</i>
French, the, <i>Franco-galli</i>	hour, <i>hōra</i>	known, <i>nōtus</i> , a, um
friend, <i>amicus</i>	how, <i>quam</i> or <i>ut</i>	
from, <i>ā</i> (ab) or <i>ē</i> (ex)	how many, <i>quot</i>	Ladysmith, <i>Castra Mariāna</i>
full, <i>plēnus</i>	how much, <i>quantopere</i>	land, <i>terra</i> ; lands, <i>agri</i>
	however, <i>autem</i> , <i>tamen</i>	land, to, <i>applicāre</i>
	hundred, <i>centum</i> ; for 200 see 'two.'	large, <i>magnus</i>
Gallic, <i>Gallicus</i>	hurrah, <i>optimē</i>	laugh, <i>ridere</i>
gas, <i>āer</i>		

lazy, <i>piger, pigra, -um</i>	miserable, <i>miser</i>	nothing, <i>nihil</i>
lead, <i>dūcere</i>	missile, <i>missile</i>	now, <i>nunc</i>
left, <i>laevus</i>	missionary, <i>nuntius</i>	nowadays, <i>hodiē</i>
region, <i>regiō</i>	<i>verbū divīnū</i>	nowhere, <i>nusquam</i>
less, <i>minus</i>	mistaken, to be, <i>errare</i>	number, <i>numerus</i>
lessons, <i>scholae</i>	mistress, <i>domina</i>	oblivion, <i>oblivio</i>
let out, <i>emittere</i>	Modder River, <i>Flūmen Turbulentum</i>	ocean, <i>oceanus</i>
letter, <i>epistula</i> or <i>litterae</i> ; (of the alphabet), <i>littera</i>	month, <i>mensis</i>	October, <i>Octōber</i>
liberty, <i>libertās</i>	moon, <i>lūna</i>	officer, <i>praejectus</i>
lie, <i>iacere</i>	morning, in the, <i>māne</i>	often, <i>saepe</i>
life, <i>vita</i>	most bravely, <i>fortissimē</i>	on, in, with Abl.
light, <i>lux</i>	mostly, <i>plērumque</i>	on account of, <i>propter</i>
like to—, <i>libenter</i> , with Verb	mother, <i>māter</i>	once, <i>quondam</i>
listen, <i>auscultāre</i>	mountain, <i>mons</i> , m.	one, <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum</i>
little, <i>parvus</i>	move, <i>movē</i>	only, <i>tantum</i> or <i>solum</i>
live (=dwell), <i>habitāre</i>	much, <i>multum</i>	onto, in, with Acc.
live on (=eat), <i>victitāre</i> , with Abl.	multitude, <i>multitūdō</i>	open space, <i>arca</i> , i
London, <i>Londinium</i>	murder, <i>trucidāre</i>	order, <i>imperāre</i>
long (adj.), <i>longus</i> , (adv.), <i>dū</i>	naked, <i>nūdus</i>	origin, <i>origō</i>
look, <i>spectāre</i>	name, <i>nōmen</i>	other, <i>alius, alia, aliud</i>
lose, <i>amittere</i>	name, to, <i>nōmināre</i>	ought: see 'behoves'
love, <i>amāre</i>	Natal, <i>Terra Nātālis</i>	out of, <i>ex</i>
lunch, <i>prandium</i>	near, <i>prope</i> or <i>ad</i>	Outlander, <i>peregrinus</i>
	necessary, <i>necesse</i>	over, <i>super</i> , with Acc.
	net, <i>indāgō</i>	overrun, <i>percurrere</i>
	never, <i>numquam</i>	oyster, <i>ostrea</i>
	new, <i>novus</i>	page, <i>pāgina</i> , i
Maefeking, <i>Statiō Bechuānārūm</i>	news, <i>nuntius</i>	panic, <i>terror</i>
make, <i>facere</i>	newspapers, <i>actadiurna</i>	part, <i>pars</i>
man, <i>vir</i> ; —human being, <i>homō</i>	next, <i>proximus</i>	pavement, <i>pavimentum</i>
manufacture, <i>fabricāre</i>	night, <i>nox</i> ; by night, <i>noctū</i>	pay attention, <i>operam dare</i>
man, <i>multī, ac, a</i>	nine hundred, <i>nōngentī</i>	peace, <i>pax</i>
march, <i>iter facere</i>	ninth, <i>nōnus</i>	people (=nation), <i>populus</i> ; (=persons), <i>homīnēs</i>
meanwhile, <i>interea</i>	no (=not any), <i>nullus</i>	perhaps, <i>fortasse</i>
mention, <i>commemorāre</i>	Nones, <i>Nōnae</i>	Picts, <i>Pictī</i>
merciful, <i>clēmens</i>	north, <i>septentrionēs</i>	picture, <i>tabula</i> , i
merry, <i>hilaris</i>	northern, <i>septentrionālis</i>	pit, <i>puteus</i>
message, <i>nuntius</i>	not, <i>nōn</i> ; not only, <i>nōn solum</i> ; not any longer, <i>nōn iam</i> ; not yet, <i>nōndum</i>	pity, <i>misericordia</i>
midland, <i>mediterrāneus</i>	note book, <i>commentāriū</i>	place, <i>locus</i>
mile, <i>mille passūs</i>		place, to, <i>collocāre</i>
miles, <i>mīlia passuum</i>		plan, <i>consilium</i>
mind, <i>animus</i>		pluck, <i>virtūs</i>
minister, <i>minister</i>		poet, <i>poēta</i>
		port, <i>portus</i>

praetor, <i>praetor</i>	schoolmaster, <i>magister</i>	sleep, <i>somnus</i>
praise, <i>laudāre</i>	schoolmistress, <i>magistra</i>	smaller, <i>minor</i> , <i>minus</i>
prefect, <i>praefectus</i>	Scots, <i>Scōtī</i>	so, <i>tam</i>
prepare, <i>parāre</i>	Scottish, <i>Scōticus</i>	so great, <i>tantus</i>
prevent, <i>prohibēre</i>	sea, <i>mare</i>	soil, <i>solum</i>
provide, <i>praebēre</i>	second, <i>secundus</i>	soldier, <i>miles</i>
province, <i>prōvincia</i>	see, see to it, <i>vidēre</i>	some, <i>nōnulli</i> (of, <i>ex</i> )
purpose, <i>consilium</i>	sell, <i>vēnumdare</i>	someday, <i>aliquandō</i>
put to death, <i>mortidare</i>	send, <i>mittere</i>	Sometimes, <i>aliterdum</i> or <i>nōnumquam</i>
queen, <i>rēgina</i>	send out, <i>ēmittere</i>	son, <i>filius</i>
rank, <i>orō</i>	September, <i>September</i>	song, <i>cantus</i>
read, <i>lectitāre</i> or <i>legō</i>	serve (as a soldier), <i>militāre</i>	soon, <i>mox</i>
(after § 34)	set up, <i>collocāre</i>	sorry; see 'vex'
ready, <i>parātus</i>	seventh, <i>septimus</i>	southern, <i>meridiānus</i>
real, <i>vērus</i>	seventieth, <i>septuāgēsimus</i>	Spaniard, <i>Hispanus</i>
rebellion, <i>rebelliō</i>	seventy-eighth, <i>duodēoctōgēsimus</i>	speak, <i>dicere</i>
recall, <i>revocāre</i>	shape, <i>forma</i> , 1	spear, <i>hasta</i> , 1
receive, <i>accipere</i>	shell, <i>concha</i> , 1	special, <i>praecipuus</i>
red, <i>ruber</i> , <i>rubra</i> , -um	shilling, <i>dēnārius</i>	square (adj.), <i>quadrātus</i>
reign, <i>regnum</i>	ship, <i>nāvis</i>	stand, <i>stāre</i>
remains, <i>reliquiae</i>	show, <i>monstrāre</i> or <i>praestāre</i>	standard, <i>signum</i>
remote, <i>remōtus</i>	side, <i>latus</i> (later-), 3	station, <i>statiō</i>
republic, <i>rēspublica</i>	siege, <i>obsidiō</i>	stature, <i>statura</i> , 1
resolve, <i>constituere</i>	signal, <i>signum</i>	storm, to, <i>expugnāre</i>
reverse, <i>incommodum</i>	signify, <i>significāre</i>	strange, <i>mirus</i>
Rhine, <i>Rhēnus</i>	Silchester, <i>Callēva</i>	strengthen, <i>firmāre</i>
ride, <i>equitāre</i>	silence, <i>silentium</i>	stretch, <i>pertinēre</i>
right, <i>dexter</i>	sing, <i>cantāre</i>	studies, <i>studia</i>
Roman, <i>Rōmānus</i>	sit down, <i>sedere</i>	subdue, <i>dēbellāre</i>
Rome, <i>Rōma</i>	situated, <i>situs</i> ; to be —, <i>iacere</i>	successfully, <i>prosperē</i>
round, <i>circum</i>	six, <i>sex</i>	suddenly, <i>subitō</i>
said (he, she), <i>inquit</i>	six hundred, <i>sexcenti</i>	surname, <i>cognōmen</i>
said (they), <i>inquiunt</i>	sixteenth, <i>sexthus decimus</i>	surrender, <i>dēdere</i>
sail, <i>navigāre</i>	sixth, <i>sextus</i>	surround, <i>circumdare</i>
Saint, <i>Sanctus</i>	sixtieth, <i>sexāgēsimus</i>	swim, <i>natāre</i>
savage, <i>saevus</i>	slaughter, <i>trucidātiō</i>	take, <i>capere</i>
save, <i>servāre</i> or <i>salvum</i>	slaughter, to, <i>trucidāre</i> ; slaughtered, <i>trucidātus</i>	take by storm, <i>expugnāre</i>
- <i>praestāre</i>	slave, <i>servus</i>	take oneself back, <i>sē recipere</i>
Saxons, <i>Saxonēs</i>	slavery, <i>servitūs</i>	teach, <i>docere</i>
say, <i>dicere</i>		tell, <i>narrāre</i> , or <i>dicere</i>
school, <i>lūdus litterārius</i>		(after § 32)
		temple, <i>templum</i>
		ten, <i>decem</i>
		tennis, <i>lūdus trigōnālis</i>



centh, <i>decimus</i>	twelfth, <i>duodeccimus</i>	(not in a question), <i>quod</i>
tesselated, <i>tessellātus</i>	twelve, <i>duodecim</i>	what o'clock, <i>quota</i>
than, <i>quam</i>	twentieth, <i>vicēsimus</i>	<i>hōra</i>
that, <i>quod</i> (but gener- ally Acc. with Inf.)	twenty, <i>vīgintī</i>	when (in a question) <i>quandō</i> ; (not in a question), <i>cum</i>
then, <i>tum</i>	two, <i>duo, duae, du</i>	whence, <i>unde</i>
there, <i>ibi</i>	uncle, <i>patruus</i>	where, <i>ubi</i>
thing, <i>rēs</i>	under, <i>sub</i>	which, <i>quī, quae, quod</i>
think, <i>cogitāre</i>	unhappy, <i>miser</i>	while, <i>dum</i>
third, <i>tertius</i>	unite, <i>conciliāre</i>	white, <i>albus, a, um</i>
thirtieth, <i>tricēsimus</i>	unless, <i>nisi</i>	who (in a question), <i>quis</i> ; (not in a ques- tion), <i>qui</i> or <i>quae</i>
thirty, <i>trigintā</i>	until, <i>dōnce</i>	whole, <i>tōtus</i>
this, <i>hic, haec, hōc</i>	upon, <i>in</i>	why, <i>cūr</i>
thousand (a), <i>mille</i>	urn, <i>urna, i</i>	wife, <i>uxor</i>
thousands, <i>milia</i>	use, <i>usus</i>	win a victory over, <i>victoriam reportāre</i>
thousandth, <i>millēsimus</i>		<i>ā</i> (or <i>ab</i> )
three, <i>trēs, m., f.; tria, n.</i>	veldt, <i>campi lūti</i>	window, <i>fenestra</i>
through, <i>per</i>	verse, <i>versus</i>	wing (of a building or army), <i>cornū</i>
throw, <i>iacere</i>	very-good, <i>optimus</i>	with, <i>cum</i> (put after <i>mē, tē, sē, nobīs,</i> <i>vobīs)</i>
thunder, <i>tonitrus</i>	vessel, <i>nāvigium</i>	within, <i>intrā</i>
thus, <i>sic</i>	vestibule, <i>vestibulum</i>	without, <i>sine</i>
time, <i>tempus</i>	veteran, <i>veterānus</i>	wolf, <i>lupus</i>
to, <i>ad</i>	vexes (it), <i>piget</i>	woman, <i>fēmina</i>
to-day, <i>hodiē</i>	victor, <i>victor</i>	worship, <i>adōrāre</i>
together, <i>unā</i>	victory, <i>victōria</i>	wound, <i>vulnerāre</i>
toil, <i>labor</i>	voice, <i>vox</i>	write, <i>scribere</i>
tolerate, <i>tolerāre</i>		write out, <i>exscribere</i>
to-morrow, <i>crās</i>	Wales, <i>Cambria</i>	writer, <i>scriptor</i>
to, <i>nimis</i> ; (—also), <i>quoque</i>	walk, <i>ambulāre</i>	
tower, <i>turris</i>	wall, <i>mūrus</i>	year, <i>annus</i>
town, <i>oppidum</i>	want, <i>inopia</i>	yellow, <i>flāvus</i>
transport, <i>transportāre</i>	war, <i>bellum</i>	yesterday, <i>heri</i>
tremble, <i>tremere</i>	warlike, <i>ferox (ferōc-), 3</i>	yet (after 'not'), <i>-dum</i>
trench, <i>fossa</i>	water, <i>aqua</i>	
tribe, <i>nātiō</i> or <i>gens</i>	wave, <i>unda</i>	
true, <i>vērus</i>	well, <i>puteus</i>	
try, <i>operam dare</i>	well (Adv.), <i>bene</i>	
tumble, <i>cadere</i>	western, <i>occidentālis</i>	
tunic, <i>tunica, i</i>	what (in a question), <i>quid</i> , Plur. <i>quae</i> ;	
turbulent, <i>turbulentus</i>		

RULE FOR PREPOSITIONS.—The Case used with most Prepositions is the Accusative, but—

The Ablative with *ab* and *ē*,

*Cum* and *sine*, *prō* and *dē*.

*In* = 'in' or 'on' takes the Abl.; = 'into' or 'onto' the Accus.

*Sub* = 'under' or 'down in' takes the Abl.; = 'down into' the Accus.